

## **Bible Study The Book Of Daniel**

## Table Of Contents

SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 1 .....	2
SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 2 .....	19
SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 3 .....	34
SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 4 .....	48
SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 5 .....	62
SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 6 .....	76
SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 7 .....	91
SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 8 .....	103
SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 9 .....	116
SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 10 .....	129
SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 11 .....	140
SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 12 .....	153

## INTRODUCTION

I wanted to give you a quick introduction to this Bible Study on the Book of Daniel. My name is Joshua Tapp from True Words Christian Church in the state of Kentucky within the United States. This book is based on the Book of Daniel Series of Sermons given at True Words Christian Church.

The numbers in brackets you see before each verse refer to the Power Point slide number that can be downloaded from the website. You can find those files and download them from the website for each chapter in Daniel by going to this page: [The Book of Daniel Series](#).

You should be saved and know that you've received everlasting life before you attempt to study the Book of Revelation. If you're not sure if you're saved, please go to this page and spend about 20 minutes listening and understanding: [How To Make It To Heaven](#).

This detailed study of the Book of Revelation should take you about 20 hours to complete. You should read the Book of Daniel through directly before you begin this study, and you might repeat reading the entire Book of Daniel several times as you go through this study. You can read the Book of Revelation or listen to the Book of Revelation in about 1 hour 20 minutes.

The King James Bible is used throughout this study, and I do not recommend ANY other Bible version in English. You should get a King James Bible and begin using it for all studies. It is the inspired and perfect word of God in English.

Also, pray before, during, and after each Bible study. Ask God for wisdom and understanding. Use the Scriptures alone to prove the conclusions you draw from study.

If you have any questions, please let me know. Email me any time at the email address below.

May God Bless You Greatly,  
Joshua Tapp  
[josh@truewordschristian.org](mailto:josh@truewordschristian.org)  
[TrueWordsChristian.org](http://TrueWordsChristian.org)

## SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 1

[2] The title of the sermon today is "DANIEL CHAPTER 1."

- Daniel is a VERY important part of Bible Prophecy.
- In other words, it helps us to know what's going to happen in the future.

Let's start out with an overview of the Book of Daniel.

- 12 chapters in the Book of Daniel.
- Covers subjects such as:
  - o The Antichrist.
  - o The Tribulation.
  - o The Abomination of Desolation.
  - o The Millennial Reign of Jesus Christ.
  - o Babylon.
  - o And many other things in the Book of Revelation.
- What's VERY interesting to see is that the Book of Daniel splits in half just like the Book of Revelation.
  - o Revelation is VERY easy to understand once you know it is split in half.
  - o Revelation 1-11 is in chronological order.
  - o Revelation 12 starts over w/ Birth of Jesus and is then in chronological order.
  - o You'll see the events from a new perspective when you start over in Chapter 12 of Revelation.
  - o Daniel is similar to that by being cut down the middle.
  - o Daniel 1-6 and then Daniel 7-12.
- Daniel 1 through 6 overview.
  - o Daniel 1-4 deals with the reign of Nebuchadnezzar.
  - o Daniel 5 deals with the END OF THE REIGN of his grandson Belshazzar.
  - o Daniel 6 tells us about King Darius.
  - o This is all in chronological order to this point.

***[3] Daniel 7:1 In the first year of Belshazzar king of Babylon Daniel had a dream and visions of his head upon his bed: then he wrote the dream, and told the sum of the matters.***

- So now you can see that we've went back in time to the FIRST YEAR of Belshazzar's reign.
- It's no longer in chronological order.
- We've went back in time to learn some details of what Daniel sees.

***[4] Daniel 8:1 In the third year of the reign of king Belshazzar a vision appeared unto me, even unto me Daniel, after that which appeared unto me at the first.***

- Now, were in the THIRD YEAR of the reign of Belshazzar.
- In Chapter 7, were in the FIRST YEAR and now we're in the THIRD YEAR.
- So remember, chronological order is King Nebuchadnezzar, King Belshazzar, and then King Darius.

***[5] Daniel 9:1 In the first year of Darius the son of Ahasuerus, of the seed of the Medes, which was made king over the realm of the Chaldeans;***

- Now, we see King Darius which parallels with Chapter 6.
- Remember, Daniel Chapter 6 tells us about King Darius.
- Darius is the one who is forced to throw Daniel in the Lion's Den.

***[6] Daniel 10:1 In the third year of Cyrus king of Persia a thing was revealed unto Daniel, whose name was called Belteshazzar; and the thing was true, but the time appointed was long; and he understood the thing, and had understanding of the vision.***

- So now we're in the 3<sup>rd</sup> year of King Cyrus.
- Chapters 10, 11, and 12 are all together.
- The same vision that Daniel sees continues throughout Chapter 10, 11, and 12.

The Book of Daniel is Similar to the Book of Revelation.

- Daniel 1-6 is in Chronological order and 7-12 are in Chronological order.
- The 2 parts of Revelation are very different from each other.
- The 2 parts of Daniel are very different from each other.
- Second half of Revelation is more difficult to understand.
- Second half of Daniel is more difficult to understand.
- So they are very similar to each other.
- You'll also see that Daniel 1 through 6 is very easy to understand.
- You have some great stories that you'll love within these first 6 chapters.
  - o Shadrach, Meshach, Abednego.
  - o Daniel and the Lion's Den.
  - o The Handwriting on the Wall.
  - o Very good stories and easy to understand.
- When you reach Chapter 7, it turns to these difficult to understand prophecies about the future.
- The Book of Daniel helps to understand the Book of Revelation at a much deeper level.
- We're going to go through the Book of Daniel verse by verse so its much easier to understand.
- And we'll be doing this at the same time we're studying the Book of Revelation too.
- We have a head start in Revelation but there's 22 chapters there and Daniel is 12.

Let's go over a quick summary of each Chapter in the Book of Daniel.

- Chapter 1:
  - o Daniel, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego are taken captive by the Babylonians.
  - o They will not eat the King's meat or drink his wine.
  - o God blesses them for these things and takes care of them.
- Chapter 2:
  - o Nebuchadnezzar has a dream of an image in 4 sections.
  - o Those 4 sections represent the 4 kingdoms of Babylon, Greece, Rome, and Persia.
- Chapter 3 is THE famous story of the Fiery Furnace with Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego.
- Chapter 4:
  - o Nebuchadnezzar becomes like a beast in the wilderness.
  - o He's eating grass out in a field for 7 years.
  - o He's lost his mind and is like an animal.
- Chapter 5 Belshazzar sees the fingers of a man writing on the wall.

- Chapter 6 is the story of Daniel in the Lion's Den.
- Chapter 7:
  - o We see 4 beasts that represent the same 4 kingdoms from the dream in Chapter 2.
  - o You see a vision of the Ancient of Days WHO IS GOD the FATHER.
  - o He's called "THE ANCIENT OF DAYS" and you'll see what He looks like in this vision.
  - o You also see the Son of Man coming with clouds in this Chapter.
  - o This is the SECOND COMING of Jesus Christ.
  - o So this adds to everything we learn in the Book of Revelation.
- Chapter 8:
  - o Daniel has a vision of a ram and a he goat.
  - o The ram represents the kings of Media and Persia.
  - o The goat represents the king of Greece.
- Chapter 9:
  - o Daniel prays and confesses the sins of his people.
  - o He prays for the restoration of Jerusalem.
  - o Then Gabriel tells Daniel about the 70 weeks.
  - o Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week that you'll hear about in all Bible prophecy comes directly from Chapter 9.
- Chapter 10, 11, 12:
  - o Complicated vision that Daniel sees after he humbled himself.
  - o Chapter 10 is an introduction to the vision.
  - o Chapter 11 is not easy to understand at all.
  - o Chapter 11 is the VERY STRONG MEAT of the prophecy.
  - o Chapter 12 tells us a lot of detail about the end of times.
  - o It talks about the resurrection of the dead, second coming, tribulation.
  - o We're given VERY specific numbers for the timing of all of these things.

#### How to study the Book of Daniel:

- Turn to Daniel Chapter 12 because we'll read something from there in just a second.
- Understand this principle about the entire Bible.
- The New Testament is much easier to understand because it's much clearer than the Old Testament.
- We have the NEW TESTAMENT.
- It's much more detailed and in the light than the Old Testament which is more in darkness to us.
- I hope you'll see this today, and you can see it when you're studying the Old vs New testaments.

So, a good way to study the Bible is to take the New Testament light and use it to help interpret what the Old Testament means.

- In other words, don't ignore VERY CLEAR teaching in Revelation and then try to use Daniel to change what Revelation says.
- The clear book of Bible Prophecy is REVELATION because it was written to REVEAL things to us.
- The Book of Revelation is VERY CLEAR and easier to understand than the Book of Daniel.
- So, we use Revelation to help us understand Daniel.
- We have a great advantage because we have the New Testament today.
- We can understand the Book of Daniel very well now BECAUSE we have Revelation.
- Even Daniel didn't understand everything he was writing BECAUSE he didn't have the Book of Revelation.

**[7] Daniel 12:8-9 And I heard, but I understood not: then said I, O my Lord, what shall be the end of these things? 9 And he said, Go thy way, Daniel: for the words are closed up and sealed till the time of the end.**

- So Daniel himself is writing all of this down BUT he doesn't understand everything.
- He says, "I understood NOT."
- Does God explain it to him? No. He says to close and seal it up until the time of the end.
- God tells him to not worry about it right now.
- These things were written to us because the end of the world is going to happen in this generation.

**[8] 1 Corinthians 10:11 Now all these things happened unto them for ensamples: and they are written for our admonition, upon whom the ends of the world are come.**

- After Jesus Christ has come the first time on this earth.
- We await His second coming.
- God has given us REVELATION so we can understand His words.

**[9] Daniel 12:10 Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried; but the wicked shall do wickedly: and none of the wicked shall understand; but the wise shall understand.**

- So this tells us that in the future, the wise will understand.
- We want to be those people.
- We have the Bible, we have Daniel, we have Revelation, we have the Gospels.
- We can put all of this together and actually understand what it all means.
- Daniel didn't understand it because he didn't have all of this information.
- We are now in the light of Jesus Christ.
- We have the Holy Spirit to teach us all things.

**[10] Daniel 12:8-9 And I heard, but I understood not: then said I, O my Lord, what shall be the end of these things? 9 And he said, Go thy way, Daniel: for the words are closed up and sealed till the time of the end.**

- So remember this right here in Daniel Chapter 12 verse 10 because we're going to look to the Book of Revelation now.
- The Book of Daniel says to close up and seal these words until the time of the end.
- Let's see what Revelation 22:10 says.

**[11] Revelation 22:10 And he saith unto me, Seal not the sayings of the prophecy of this book: for the time is at hand.**

- So, this says the exact opposite.
- It says, "SEAL NOT THE SAYINGS OF THE PROPHECY OF THIS BOOK FOR THE TIME IS AT HAND."
- Do we have the Book of Revelation now? Oh yes. Is the time at hand? Oh yes.
- The next thing that's going to happen is the Tribulation because the Bible says so.
- It's not the Rapture. It's the Tribulation. It's not God's Wrath. It's the Tribulation.
- We will go through Tribulation before Jesus Christ comes back in the clouds.
- So Revelation tells us that it is the CLEAR REVELATION. Daniel is the tougher prophecy to understand.
- Do you see that today? Now, we use Revelation, THE LIGHT, to help us understand Daniel.

- With that overview of Daniel, let's get started in verse 1 of Daniel Chapter 1.

***[12] Daniel 1:1 In the third year of the reign of Jehoiakim king of Judah came Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon unto Jerusalem, and besieged it.***

- King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon here in the THIRD YEAR of the reign of Jehoiakim King of Judah takes Jerusalem.

***[13] Daniel 1:2 And the Lord gave Jehoiakim king of Judah into his hand, with part of the vessels of the house of God: which he carried into the land of Shinar to the house of his god; and he brought the vessels into the treasure house of his god.***

- The Lord allowed this to happen.
- God gives the King of Judah, Jehoiakim, into King Nebuchadnezzar's hand.
- He also gives part of the vessels of the house of God to Nebuchadnezzar.
- And King Nebuchadnezzar carries those vessels into the land of Shinar to the treasure house of his god.
- So now Jerusalem is in captivity and Judah is in captivity.
- This means they have been captured and they have new rulers.
- God says this will happen to them in the book of Jeremiah.
- He tells them that the King of Babylon will come and scatter them into all nations.
- They will be carried away captive into Babylon.

***[14] Jeremiah 20:4 For thus saith the LORD, Behold, I will make thee a terror to thyself, and to all thy friends: and they shall fall by the sword of their enemies, and thine eyes shall behold it: and I will give all Judah into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he shall carry them captive into Babylon, and shall slay them with the sword.***

- So what's happening here in Daniel is fulfilling what we learn in the Book of Jeremiah.
- God says, "He will all Judah into the hand of the King of Babylon" and that's what happens right there in Daniel 1.

***[15] Daniel 1:3 And the king spake unto Ashpenaz the master of his eunuchs, that he should bring certain of the children of Israel, and of the king's seed, and of the princes;***

- So this Ashpenaz is the master of the eunuchs or the leader of the leaders.
- He is under King Nebuchadnezzar and from Babylon, he has high authority.
- He is told to certain of the children of Israel and of the king's seed and of the princes.
- So King Nebuchadnezzar wants specific people from Judah brought to him.
- Let's see who exactly he wants in the next verse.

***[16] Daniel 1:4 Children in whom was no blemish, but well favoured, and skilful in all wisdom, and cunning in knowledge, and understanding science, and such as had ability in them to stand in the king's palace, and whom they might teach the learning and the tongue of the Chaldeans.***

- He doesn't want adults or older people.
- He wants the children who have nothing wrong with them, are well favored, skillful, who know how to do things, have knowledge, they understand science.



- In other words, he wants the best and the smartest children from kingly lines.
- He wants them so they can teach them the things of the Chaldeans and their language or tongue.

He wants to take God's people and indoctrinate them into their way of life.

- He's setting up a new kingdom and it's a great plan.
- Take the children and teach them your wicked ways. That's what changes the next generation.
- Who else is doing that right now?
- Satan is constantly working to take our children and indoctrinate them into the ways of this world.
- It's the same EXACT thing.
- He wants to get the best and brightest of God's people and get them to serve his own agenda, not God's.

These eunuchs are leaders but they are also known to be castrated males.

- Their society were already feminizing the men by castrating them.
- So that should tell you a little about these leaders.
- They are feminized leaders who are supposedly able to do a better job at leading because they're castrated.
- What??? That's not what the Bible says. Men are to be leaders without being castrated.

***[17] Deuteronomy 23:1 He that is wounded in the stones, or hath his privy member cut off, shall not enter into the congregation of the LORD.***

- Think about this. The plan of the devil is working. Nebuchadnezzar's plan here is the same plan.
- Take our children and confuse them about their gender and who they really are. And it's working.
- Children don't even know that there are only 2 genders, male and female, when it's obvious.
- Adults are teaching them differently and it's sickening.

Satan wants you to go drop off your kids at the public school where the Chaldeans and King Nebuchadnezzar can teach them all the so-called right ways to do things.

- Let's teach them that they come from animals, that they can be any gender they want, that it's okay to fornicate as long as you do it "SAEFLY", and on and on and on.
- NO!!! God's people need to be raising their own children so we can bring them up with the Bible completely and not with all this worldly made-up trash that's out there.
- When we give into all that stuff, what happens to the world?
- The children growing up in the worldly trash are now running the world for the next generation.
- And it turns to evil trash.

***[18] Daniel 1:5 And the king appointed them a daily provision of the king's meat, and of the wine which he drank: so nourishing them three years, that at the end thereof they might stand before the king.***

- So look there, that's just like the "School Lunch Program" or other programs from the government.
- You're going to eat my way and drink my way and you'll be better off THIS way. Really? I don't think so.

***[19] Daniel 1:6 Now among these were of the children of Judah, Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah:***

- All of Judah went captive. It took some time but ALL OF JUDAH goes captive. This is just one part of it.
- These are just a few of the children or kids that are taken. The best and brightest are here in this group.

- There are more than just the 4 that are mentioned here. There's a whole group of children that are taken.
- These are their ACTUAL names. Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego are the Nebuchadnezzar given names.

***[20] Daniel 1:7 Unto whom the prince of the eunuchs gave names: for he gave unto Daniel the name of Belteshazzar; and to Hananiah, of Shadrach; and to Mishael, of Meshach; and to Azariah, of Abed-nego.***

- Daniel's Hebrew name is Daniel but his Babylonian name is Belteshazzar.
- Hananiah is Hebrew. Shadrach is his Babylonian name.
- Mishael is Meshach and Azariah is Abednego.
- The prince of the eunuchs changed their names.

***[21] Daniel 1:8 But Daniel purposed in his heart that he would not defile himself with the portion of the king's meat, nor with the wine which he drank: therefore he requested of the prince of the eunuchs that he might not defile himself.***

- This is a VERY important verse to understand.
- Does it say that all 4 of them made the decision not to defile themselves?
- No, it does not. DANIEL purposed in his heart to not defile himself with the king's meat and wine.
- What was wrong with the King's food?
- The wine was probably alcoholic wine.
- The meat was probably unclean meat or meat sacrificed to idols. It was not good.
- Even in Revelation Chapter 2 of the New Testament, the people are eating meat sacrificed to idols.

***[22] Revelation 2:14 But I have a few things against thee, because thou hast there them that hold the doctrine of Balaam, who taught Balac to cast a stumblingblock before the children of Israel, to eat things sacrificed unto idols, and to commit fornication.***

- So, look, it ALWAYS takes ONE PERSON to take a stand.
- All the others are usually not doing what they're supposed to be doing because it's easier.
- It's easier to just go along with the world and what they're doing.
- Daniel, ONE MAN, takes a stand and says he's not going to do it.
- The results of Daniel doing this results in 3 others saying, "Hey, we're not going to follow this evil way either!!!"
- But look, not everyone is going to join Daniel here. Not all the people in their original group. Just a few.
- Also, though, notice how Daniel does this.
- He doesn't come out and fight them. See how it's done here by Daniel.
- Let's read verse 8 again.

***[23] Daniel 1:8 But Daniel purposed in his heart that he would not defile himself with the portion of the king's meat, nor with the wine which he drank: therefore he requested of the prince of the eunuchs that he might not defile himself.***

- Daniel purposed in his heart that HE WOULD NOT defile in himself.
- Then at the end it says HE REQUESTED that he might not defile himself.
- Daniel requested it because he was put under their authority by God.
- Just like you have a boss or manager at work, and you are under their authority.

You don't go to your boss and make demands, "HEY, YOU'RE GOING TO ALLOW ME TO DO THIS!!!"

- In your heart, you know you aren't going to do it BUT you can be polite and kind about your request.
- Daniel does go in screaming and yelling that "YOU'LL JUST HAVE TO KILL ME!!! I am not eating it!!!"
- He doesn't do that. He requests, "Is there some way we can get around this?"
- We need to do our best to obey God given LEGITIMATE authorities.
- Be respectful and you can get what you want and what God wants. That's what Daniel is doing here.

**[24] Daniel 1:9 Now God had brought Daniel into favour and tender love with the prince of the eunuchs.**

- Do you see that? Compare that to an example with a job in this world.
- Let's say you're a hard worker, smart, and you do a great job at work.
- Your manager loves you because you make his job easier.
- Just like Daniel was here, you'll be in good favor and tender love with your manager.
- Or, you can use your parents as an example.
- If you're always doing good and helping make their job as a parent easier, they're going to listen to you much better when you want to take a stand against one of their rules.
- Same thing at work. If your manager comes up with a new rule that you don't think is right, they will listen to you if you're a great worker.

If you're a lazy bum at work who never does anything your boss asks, they're not going to listen to you.

- Your manager isn't going to bend any for you if you're no good to him.
- But guess what? Daniel was worth it to them. God brought Daniel into favor with them. They loved him.
- If your manager pressures you to do things that are wrong, you'll have that favor to convince them otherwise.
- And God can and will do that for you all throughout your life. He will bring you into favor in other people's eyes so you can advance the cause for HIM. He will take care of you according to His will for you.

**[25] Daniel 1:10 And the prince of the eunuchs said unto Daniel, I fear my lord the king, who hath appointed your meat and your drink: for why should he see your faces worse liking than the children which are of your sort? then shall ye make me endanger my head to the king.**

- This prince of the eunuchs tells Daniel that he is in fear of the KING.
- Why is he in fear? Because the king will chop off his head! This is a TRUE threat at this time.
- They better do what he asks or they will lose their heads.
- But, he says that would only happen if their faces are worse than the other children of Judah.
- So the King doesn't just fire them if they don't do their job, HE CHOPS OFF THEIR HEAD!!!
- Most people wouldn't compromise at all, right? This prince wants to help Daniel but this prince is in fear.
- So, let's see what Daniel says.

**[26] Daniel 1:11-12 Then said Daniel to Melzar, whom the prince of the eunuchs had set over Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, 12 Prove thy servants, I beseech thee, ten days; and let them give us pulse to eat, and water to drink.**

- The prince of the eunuchs is named Melzar here.
- Included with Daniel is Hananiah or Shadrach, Mishael or Meshach, and Azariah or Abednego.

- So there's 3 more than Daniel that are taking a stand with Daniel.
- Daniel says, "Please just give us 10 days to eat pulse and give us water to drink. Test us."
- Pulse is thought to be what's beaten out of seeds and beans. Legumes, beans, seeds. Stuff like that.

***[27] Daniel 1:13-14 Then let our countenances be looked upon before thee, and the countenance of the children that eat of the portion of the king's meat: and as thou seest, deal with thy servants. 14 So he consented to them in this matter, and proved them ten days.***

- So Daniel requests to let them eat pulse and drink water as a test.
- He requests that the prince then take a look at them and compare them to the others.
- The prince of the eunuchs says, "Okay." So he grants their request and allows this for 10 days.
- So, let's see what happened after that 10-day trial.

***[28] Daniel 1:15 And at the end of ten days their countenances appeared fairer and fatter in flesh than all the children which did eat the portion of the king's meat.***

- So they passed the test after 10 days!
- They looked better than the other children of Judah!
- This means Melzar should be happy with them, right?
- Oh yes, he was. Let's see what he does.

***[29] Daniel 1:16 Thus Melzar took away the portion of their meat, and the wine that they should drink; and gave them pulse.***

- Since they passed the test, Melzar takes away the portion of the King's meat and the wine AND instead gives them pulse to eat.
- The king's meat and wine was not helping them.
- God steps in here and shows that his way is better AS ALWAYS.
- I think this was miracle that God did for those 4 men.

Some people will use this story to say that PULSE or being a vegetarian is better than eating meat.

- Well, there's proof throughout all of the Bible that this isn't true.
- Even within the Book of Daniel there's proof that Daniel didn't continue to eat this way.

***[30] Daniel 10:2-3 In those days I Daniel was mourning three full weeks. 3 I ate no pleasant bread, neither came flesh nor wine in my mouth, neither did I anoint myself at all, till three whole weeks were fulfilled.***

- So obviously he was eating meat and drinking wine after this period of time.
- Meat doesn't have to be bad. The King's meat, again, was probably unclean or sacrificed to idols.
- In Genesis Chapter 18, you'll see that the LORD shows up and eats BEEF with Abraham.

***[31] Genesis 18:8 And he took butter, and milk, and the calf which he had dressed, and set it before them; and he stood by them under the tree, and they did eat.***

- Wine doesn't have to be bad. It doesn't have to be strong alcoholic wine.
- The juice of the grape is called wine. The word wine is given 231 times in the Bible.

- Wine is NOT ALWAYS referring to an alcoholic beverage in the Bible. But it is some of the time.
- There's a whole sermon for this because wine is mentioned 231 times in the Bible so obviously it's a very important topic.
- Do you know how many times juice is mentioned? ONCE. And the one time it's mentioned is in the context of the word wine.

**[32] Song of Solomon 8:2 *I would lead thee, and bring thee into my mother's house, who would instruct me: I would cause thee to drink of spiced wine of the juice of my pomegranate.***

- That right there is the only time JUICE is mentioned in the Bible.
- You could say, really? 231 mentions of wine and only mentions juice once. No.
- Wine also refers to the juice of fruit.
- It can mean the fermented fruit of juice which turns alcoholic or can mean the unfermented fruit of juice which is not alcoholic.

In Hebrew and Greek, they have one word for juice and wine. One word like EASTER and PASSOVER is the same word in Greek. "PASCHA."

- When using words like that, you then have to see the context in which they are being used.
- For example, if you ask someone the word for Easter in Greek they will say Pascha.
- Well, what's the Greek word for Passover? Pascha. Same word. Not the same thing.
- In English, we think of wine as the alcoholic beverage and the juice of the fruit as JUICE. We have 2 words.
- That's why there's a misunderstanding there.

We need to change the way we think about the word wine. It's fruit juice or the alcoholic beverage.

- Different types of wine are mentioned in the Bible.
- New wine is like brand new juice of the fruit. It's not going to be alcoholic.
- That's exactly what we have for communion here. Freshly squeezed grape juice. It's like new wine.
- Here's an example of the Bible saying there's different types of wine.

**[33] Proverbs 23:29-30 *Who hath woe? who hath sorrow? who hath contentions? who hath babbling? who hath wounds without cause? who hath redness of eyes? 30 They that tarry long at the wine; they that go to seek mixed wine.***

- So you can see those that seek mixed wine are the ones who will drink for a long time.
- These are the ones who will have red eyes, who babble, who have sorrow the Bible says.
- Meat is good and new wine from fruit juice is good.
- Daniel wasn't a vegan or vegetarian as it says later in Daniel that he is eating meat and drinking wine.
- You can get the right mix of protein from beans, lentils, nuts, and seeds.
- So either Daniel was getting everything he needed OR God did a miracle during those 10 days and while they were eating of that type of food called pulse and water.

Daniel finds a way.

- Same thing with us. We can find a way if we truly care about God.
- For example, if you have a job in which you're supposed to work on Sunday morning, Sunday night, Wednesday night.

- Many people just give up and say, "Well, I work on all those days so I can't come to Church to worship the Almighty Creator who controls ALL PARTS OF MY LIFE and makes things easier for me, or tougher for me, controls whether I get a raise for my job, whether I have children, He provides food for me, and even helped me to get that great job."

You know: "I just don't have time for God. I don't have time for the ONE that GAVE ME THIS LIFE!!!"

- That's sad. God gave us this life, and we don't have time to stop and study His Words and WORSHIP HIM!
- God, if you trust Him, He'll do the same thing He did for Daniel right here.
- He'll find a way for you to make it to Church when you think you don't have time.
- God created time, okay? He knows whether you're putting Him first or not.
- That's the most important commandment OF ALL TIME. God says so.
- Love the Lord YOUR GOD with EVERYTHING THAT YOU ARE. How do you love Him?
- He says you love Him by following His commandments. He commands us to go to Church.

***[34] Hebrews 10:24-25 And let us consider one another to provoke unto love and to good works: 25 Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is; but exhorting one another: and so much the more, as ye see the day approaching.***

- How do you love God? You follow His commandments. If you don't, He says you don't love me.
- And guess what? DANIEL LOVED GOD. He's following His commandments.
- So what's God do? He takes care of Daniel. God repays good with good. God also repays evil with evil.
- Evil is not following God's commandments. That's the definition of evil.
- When we don't follow God's commandments, we're not loving God. It's that simple.
- And Daniel loves God and will not give into ANY other way.

This 10-day period also related to the Tribulation if you remember

- Do you remember in the Book of Revelation when we talked about Tribulation 10 days?
- Here's the verse:

***[35] Revelation 2:10 Fear none of those things which thou shalt suffer: behold, the devil shall cast some of you into prison, that ye may be tried; and ye shall have tribulation ten days: be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life.***

- That test period that Daniel and the other 3 go through is a 10-day period.
- The Book of Daniel is all about Bible Prophecy and telling us about what's going to happen in the future.
- Daniel takes a stand and stays faithful to God!
- So the Book of Daniel STARTS OUT with Daniel taking a stand and refusing to do evil.
- HE DOES NOT GIVE IN TO WICKEDNESS!!!

When the Tribulation gets here, YOU WILL BE TESTED AND TRIED. Just like Daniel.

- There will be persecution UNLIKE anything we've ever seen.
- Your resolve will be tested. Will you give in OR not?
- As the end gets closer, people will stop preaching the Bible because the Bible will be seen as HATE SPEECH. It will be illegal. The Bible will be illegal.
- The Bible says a homosexual is an abomination SO we'll be pressured to stop preaching the Bible.
- "That's just HATEFUL people will say." The so-called churches are leading the charge with this.

- They say, "We accept EVERYONE no matter what." Well, guess what? GOD DOESN'T!!!
- In other words, the so-called churches are saying they are better and more loving than God.
- But listen, they don't even understand love and what it is.
- They hate because they're getting people thrown into hell.
- When you go against God, that means you're going against what's best for you and for others.
- If you follow God's commandments, you're automatically doing what's best for you and for others.

People will have their heads chopped off for JESUS CHRIST during the Tribulation.

- These people will refuse to give in to wickedness.
- People will be required to bow down and worship the antichrist in the future.
- Daniel Chapter 3 shows the same thing.
- They said BOW DOWN or we'll throw you in that fiery furnace.
- So let's say this happens in your lifetime, what are you going to do?
- Are you going to follow in with the rest of the people and bow down?
- Or, will you be like Daniel, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego and stand up for God.
- "I WILL NOT GIVE INTO THIS EVIL. I WILL NOT BOW DOWN."
- "Well, we'll cut your head off then." HEY GO AHEAD! I WILL NOT BOW DOWN.

It's easy right now. We have freedom. We have laws that protect us.

- But guess what? People still won't take a stand for God and it's easy right now to do so.
- You're protected in this country.
- You haven't been kidnapped and been taken to a different country like Daniel.
- They aren't throwing people into fiery furnaces here in this country.
- We can say what we want. We will suffer light persecution but nothing bad.
- You won't be thrown into prison for preaching the Bible.

People won't even stand up to their friends or family when it comes to God.

- The ONE TRUE GOD is right here in this Bible. If it's not this God, we better stand up and say something.
- It's that simple. If it's not this God, it's a false God.
- People will not speak up because ONE MAN might say something "BAD" about them. Who cares?
- I care what God thinks about me. I don't care what any man thinks about me FOLLOWING GOD.
- In other words, if WE CANNOT TAKE A STAND right now THERE'S NO WAY we'll stand up for God during the Tribulation when our heads will be chopped off.

That's why the Pre-Tribulation Rapture is TRASH.

- They're teaching people that they don't need to be ready.
- They're teaching them that God will Rapture them away next before anything bad happens.

***[36] 2 Timothy 3:12 Yea, and all that will live godly in Christ Jesus shall suffer persecution.***

- The Bible NEVER says we won't suffer persecution.
- The Bible says we will SUFFER.
- The entire Bible says this. The Book of Revelation and Daniel says we will go through Tribulation.
- It's so obvious that I truly don't understand how ANYONE can teach the Pre-Tribulation Rapture.
- If you're reading the Bible as a whole, you would NEVER teach that trash.
- I want you to see this verse that I love BECAUSE it goes perfectly with what we've been learning.



**[37] Jeremiah 12:5** *If thou hast run with the footmen, and they have wearied thee, then how canst thou contend with horses? and if in the land of peace, wherein thou trustedst, they wearied thee, then how wilt thou do in the swelling of Jordan?*

- In other words, if you're a preacher or a leader in a church in this country in which you're protected:
- THEN HOW are you going to contend when REAL PERSECUTION hits you?
- The Bible says so. Who cares what the persecution will be?
- When it becomes illegal to preach against homosexuals, transgender, blah, blah, blah, MOST CHURCHES AND PREACHERS won't be affected!!!

Why? Because they won't say anything now. They're too scared their paychecks will be affected OR they're too scared they'll be on the news OR they're too scared that someone will think bad of them.

- In other words, they NEVER stand up for God
- They won't risk offending someone OR losing some money OR having the GOVT padlock their doors.
- So how long are we supposed to be faithful to God? When do we give into the world?
- Revelation 2:10 tells us to be FAITHFUL unto death and He will give us a CROWN OF LIFE.
- These same people talk BIG and say they're willing to die for Christ BUT they can't stand up and preach what the Bible says.
- If it came down to dying for Christ, they'd bow down in a microsecond. That's the truth.

Here's something to remember:

- "IF YOU'RE NOT WILLING TO LIVE FOR CHRIST you sure won't be WILLING TO DIE FOR CHRIST!"
- Do you see that today?
- You're not going to die for Him if you won't even stand up and tell someone about Jesus.
- That's the truth. If you won't tell people the truth in what the Bible says, you won't die for Christ!
- It's much easier to LIVE for Christ than to DIE for Him. Do you see that?

These false preachers will spew lies out of their mouth and say they are ready to die for Christ.

- But when it comes to preaching that women should stay silent in the Churches because GOD SAYS SO, they won't touch it.
- Does that make any sense? "I will die for Jesus, but I'm not going to say that husbands should rule over their wives. That just doesn't match our society now."
- Well I say, "WHO CARES WHAT OUR SOCIETY THINKS?" We need to care what God thinks.

Matthew 24, Mark 13, and Luke 21 are 3 chapters in the Bible that tell us about the 2<sup>nd</sup> coming of Jesus Christ.

- I want you to see something in Mark 13 that matches with what we're learning here in Daniel Chapter 1.
- So King Nebuchadnezzar is taking the children and indoctrinating them with lies.
- That's what our public school system is doing, that's what false churches are doing, that's the world is doing.
- We need to wake up and see this TODAY. Some people will say, "Oh, it's not that bad."
- Well, that's what Satan says too: "Oh, well, it's not REALLY that bad."
- So, see this in Mark 13:

**[38] Mark 13:12** *Now the brother shall betray the brother to death, and the father the son; and children shall rise up against their parents, and shall cause them to be put to death.*



- Why would a brother betray a brother? Why would children betray their parents?
- Why would they cause their parents to be put to death?
- Because someone else is teaching them everything against the Bible!
- Someone else is indoctrinating them with lies upon lies every day and every week until it becomes truth to them.
- "Well, my parents just don't understand that there are more than 2 genders. They're just too old-fashioned. They can't understand how to be progressive. Get rid of them!!!"
- That's what's going to happen but it's going to get worse and worse.
- How do we know that will happen? Because JESUS says so. It will happen.

***[39] Daniel 1:17 As for these four children, God gave them knowledge and skill in all learning and wisdom: and Daniel had understanding in all visions and dreams.***

- GOD GAVE THEM knowledge and skill.
- Did they learn it from anyone else? Nope. Sure didn't. God gave it to them.
- Just like I tell my children in their schoolwork, "If you need some help with something you're having trouble with, we'll help you BUT you need to ask God first."
- God will teach you ALL THINGS He says. ALL THINGS.

***[40] Daniel 1:18-19 Now at the end of the days that the king had said he should bring them in, then the prince of the eunuchs brought them in before Nebuchadnezzar. 19 And the king communed with them; and among them all was found none like Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah: therefore stood they before the king.***

- Look at that. Out of ALL there was NONE found like those 4. NONE.
- They stood before the KING and no one else was like them. In other words, they were amazing.
- Why? Because GOD made them that way. Why? Because they were faithful to Him.
- They loved God and He loved them.
- You don't get God's love by HATING HIM and going against Him. NEVER does that happen in the Bible.
- When it's time to bow down to a false god in Chapter 3, it's only these who don't bow down.

Look, your kids can make it through public school and stay faithful to God but it's going to be very tough.

- Daniel, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego made it through. Same thing.
- But wow, if they don't HAVE to go through it, don't send them through there.
- You can't even teach the Bible in public school.
- If they are going to public school, you better be teaching them even more at home BECAUSE you'll have to counter it. You'll have to teach them the truth so they know the lies when they see them.

Even private schools and teachers there don't know the truth so they'll teach them wrong too.

- We need to get this right. Our children are VERY IMPORTANT!!! They deserve your time.
- Teach your children at home and raise them with God. What's the first lesson? The Bible.
- How much better will your children turn out if you bring them up with GOD? Allow God to teach!
- Teach them at home and take it VERY SERIOUSLY. Home school isn't NO SCHOOL.
- Bible first. Then go into the other subjects. Math, English, Science (real science is the truth), Writing.
- REAL KNOWLEDGE COMES FROM GOD! A good education doesn't come from public schools!!!
- But how much better will they be? Let's see what the Bible says.

**[41] Daniel 1:20-21** *And in all matters of wisdom and understanding, that the king inquired of them, he found them ten times better than all the magicians and astrologers that were in all his realm. 21 And Daniel continued even unto the first year of king Cyrus.*

- So these other children not named Daniel, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego ALL got all their knowledge from the world.
- Daniel and the 3 others got their knowledge from the LORD! And who turned out better?
- It says, they were found to be 10 TIMES better! Wow! 10 times better is a lot. That's not a small amount.
- But it wasn't just 10 times better than the other children. Do you see that?
- It's 10 TIMES better than ALL the magicians and astrologers that were in ALL HIS REALM!!!
- So throughout all the kingdom they were 10 times better than the brightest and the best.
- Does that not testify to what we should be doing to teach our children?
- The Bible is what they need to know. The other stuff will come when you put God first.

**[42] Matthew 6:33** *But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and his righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.*

- What are we supposed to do? What's the NUMBER ONE PRIORITY in your life?
- It better be GOD. God is the one who teaches us all things.
- Do you know God can take the most simple person with no wisdom and knowledge and make that person wise beyond all others?
- Did you know that? Do you believe what the Bible says?

**[43] Psalm 19:7** *The law of the LORD is perfect, converting the soul: the testimony of the LORD is sure, making wise the simple.*

- I thank God for the wisdom He is giving to all of us who are here right now learning His words.
- I thank God for giving me a wife and children who are going to be far greater than I in the Kingdom of Heaven.
- I just ask them to remember me when they're ruling over me in heaven. And they will.
- To end, I want to look at the last verse again there.

**[44] Daniel 1:21** *And Daniel continued even unto the first year of king Cyrus.*

- Do you know how much later this is?
- Daniel continued working for the King EVEN until the King of Persia, Cyrus, took over.
- This is 70 years later! That's a long time. Daniel continues to be in a very high position.
- Still serving God. Still preaching the word of God. Still a prophet for the Lord God Almighty.
- We need to be like Daniel. I want to be just a small portion of what Daniel was in this book here.
- Let's STAND UP for God like Daniel did. WE NEED BOLDNESS!!!
- We need to do what's right no matter what happens to us.
- Let's be the best we can be for God. That's what Daniel did. He stood up to evil.
- We need this same character. We need to not just hear God's word BUT we need to do God's word.
- Let's be doers of the word for all of our life just like Daniel.
- What an awesome and amazing example we have to follow in Daniel.

- Let's pray.

## SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 2

[2] The title of the sermon today is “DANIEL CHAPTER 2.”

- Quick overview of the structure of the Book of Daniel.
- Chapters 1 through 6 are the Bible stories that we’re very familiar with.
- Chapters 7 through 12 are the Bible prophecy chapters that are more difficult.
- The division of the Book of Daniel directly in half is VERY OBVIOUS and CLEAR.
- Chapters 1 through 6 are chronological.
- Right in the beginning of Chapter 7, that ends. We back up in time.
- Chapters 7 through 12 are then in chronological order again.
- The 2 separate sections in the Book of Daniel are very obvious.

There is another separation or division in the Book of Daniel that’s VERY IMPORTANT to know.

- The Book of Daniel is written in HEBREW and ARAMAIC or SYRIACK.
- The Bible calls it SYRIACK but we know it today as ARAMAIC.
- Where does the book of Daniel make the switch from Hebrew to Aramaic and then back to Hebrew?

**[3] Daniel 2:4 *Then spake the Chaldeans to the king in Syriack, O king, live for ever: tell thy servants the dream, and we will shew the interpretation.***

- This is where the Book of Daniel starts in SYRIACK.
- It continues in this language until the end of Chapter 7.

**[4] Daniel 7:28 *Hitherto is the end of the matter. As for me Daniel, my cogitations much troubled me, and my countenance changed in me: but I kept the matter in my heart.***

- This is where the book of Daniel stops talking about Daniel in the third person.
- When it changes language, that’s when we start to hear directly from Daniel in the first person.
- In Chapter 8, you’ll start to see Daniel say “I SAW A VISION.” It’s no longer “DANIEL DID THIS.”
- It’s “I, DANIEL, DID THIS OR SAW THIS.”
- The rest of the book of Daniel from Chapter 8 is completed in Hebrew.
- So, look, this is another division of language in the Book of Daniel.
- You can say there’s a Hebrew Section and a SYRIACK Section of this Book.
- There’s only one other book that uses SYRIACK and that’s the Book of Ezra.
- And again, it’s only portions of the Book of Ezra from different Kings of Persia.

**[5] Ezra 4:7 *And in the days of Artaxerxes wrote Bishlam, Mithredath, Tabeel, and the rest of their companions, unto Artaxerxes king of Persia; and the writing of the letter was written in the Syrian tongue, and interpreted in the Syrian tongue.***

- So here, it’s called the Syrian TONGUE or Syrian LANGUAGE.
- Syriack in Daniel, Syrian in Ezra, and Aramaic in today’s world.
- All 3 are the same language.

Daniel Chapter 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7 are written in Syriack so what's special about this?

- There's a pattern that comes up in these chapters.
- For example: Shadrach, Meshach, Abednego getting thrown in the fiery furnace and Daniel getting thrown into the Lion's Den. They are similar events of persecution.
- Let's draw this pattern of chapters on the white board.

2	3	4	5	6	7
A	B	C	C	B	A

Pattern A in Chapter 2

- Chapter 2 is about 4 earthly kingdoms that are destroyed by God's eternal kingdom.

Pattern B in Chapter 3

- In Chapter 3, God's people STAND UP for God, they're sentenced to DEATH, and God saves them.

Pattern C in Chapter 4

- In Chapter 4, the King of Babylon (Nebuchadnezzar) is judged and punished for his pride.
- Daniel interprets the dream he has and that interpretation is bad news for the King.
- He spends 7 years out in the wilderness.

Pattern A comes back again in Chapter 5

- In Chapter 5, the King of Babylon (Belshazzar) is lifted up with pride just like Nebuchadnezzar.
- Daniel interprets the handwriting on the wall and it's BAD NEWS again for the King.
- The King is killed that night.

Pattern B comes back again in Chapter 6

- In Chapter 6, Daniel stands up for God and is sentenced to death just like Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego in Chapter 3.
- God saves Daniel just like He saved the other in Chapter 3.

Pattern C comes back in Chapter 7 just as we see it in Chapter 2.

- You'll see 4 worldly kingdoms that are destroyed by God's eternal kingdom.
- Let's put that on the white board.

A	B	C
2, 7	3, 6	4, 5

A = 4 kingdoms destroyed by God's ETERNAL KINGDOM.

B = God's people STAND UP, are sentenced to death, God saves them.

C = King of Babylon is prideful, Daniel interprets for them, that King is punished.

This is the EXACT pattern you'll see in the Book of Daniel and remember these chapters are written in Syriack.

- Why is this pattern so important?
- We need to realize the GREAT CONNECTION between these chapters.
- And especially today since we're studying Chapter 2, we need to see how it's connected to Chapter 7.
- To fully understand Chapter 2 and Chapter 7, we need to understand they are connected.

- So you have this section of the Book of Daniel in Syriack and it follows this pattern.

For the rest of Daniel in Hebrew, it also follows a similar pattern.

- Chapters 8, 9, 10, and 11 are similar.
- Their pattern looks like this and you'll notice it when you read through and study this book.
- Let's draw these chapters and patterns on the white board.

8	9	10	11
D	E	E	D

Pattern D in Chapter 8 and 11.

- In Chapter 8, we see all the details about the THIRD KINGDOM Grecia and the Abomination of Desolation.
- In Chapter 11, more details about the same Kingdom of Grecia and the Abomination of Desolation.

Pattern E in Chapters 9 and 10.

- Chapter 9 is about Daniel praying to God and God sending him an answer.
- Chapter 10 is the same thing. Daniel is praying to God. God sends him the answer.
- All of these patterns help us to break down the Book of Daniel.
- We're cutting it into smaller pieces so we can understand it much easier and better.
- When something is complex like the Bible, this really, really helps.
- With that, we're going to start in verse 1 of Daniel Chapter 2.

***[6] Daniel 2:1 And in the second year of the reign of Nebuchadnezzar dreamed dreams, wherewith his spirit was troubled, and his sleep brake from him.***

- We're in the second year of the reign of Nebuchadnezzar.
- He's dreaming dreams and his spirit is troubled. He's having trouble sleeping now.

***[7] Daniel 2:2-3 Then the king commanded to call the magicians, and the astrologers, and the sorcerers, and the Chaldeans, for to shew the king his dreams. So they came and stood before the king. 3 And the king said unto them, I have dreamed a dream, and my spirit was troubled to know the dream.***

- The King is calling people in to help. Astrologers, sorcerers, and magicians.
- We see the type of people the King is relying on to help him.
- The Chaldeans are a special group of those people and they are known as the wise men.
- The dreams are really bothering him and he wants to know what they mean.

***[8] Daniel 2:4 Then spake the Chaldeans to the king in Syriack, O king, live for ever: tell thy servants the dream, and we will shew the interpretation.***

- If you're going to interpret a dream, you got to know what the dream was, right?
- So they're asking, "Hey King, what was your dream?" Then, we'll tell you what it means.
- Do you know how you have dreams sometimes but you forget them almost immediately?
- I do the same thing all the time. Well, watch what the King says here.

**[9] Daniel 2:5-6** *The king answered and said to the Chaldeans, The thing is gone from me: if ye will not make known unto me the dream, with the interpretation thereof, ye shall be cut in pieces, and your houses shall be made a dunghill. 6 But if ye shew the dream, and the interpretation thereof, ye shall receive of me gifts and rewards and great honour: therefore shew me the dream, and the interpretation thereof.*

- King Nebuchadnezzar forgot the dream.
- But he wants to know what the dream was AND what it means.
- If they don't, he tells them they shall be cut in pieces and all of their homes will be made into dunghills.
- And he's serious. It's not a joke. He ruled like that, and he would do what he said.
- But, if they are able to show the dream and the interpretation, they would receive great gifts, rewards, and honor all throughout his kingdom.
- He says, "Hey, show it to me and give me the interpretation." He forgot his dream.
- We've had the same things happen to us. We want to remember a dream but we forget it quickly.
- Wouldn't you say the King is being just a tiny bit unreasonable? Yeah, the others think so too.

**[10] Daniel 2:7-8** *They answered again and said, Let the king tell his servants the dream, and we will shew the interpretation of it. 8 The king answered and said, I know of certainty that ye would gain the time, because ye see the thing is gone from me.*

- So they ask the King again to tell them the dream.
- He says, "Hey, you're wasting my time. I forgot the dream. Did you not hear what I said?"
- And then the King continues in verse 9.

**[11] Daniel 2:9-11** *But if ye will not make known unto me the dream, there is but one decree for you: for ye have prepared lying and corrupt words to speak before me, till the time be changed: therefore tell me the dream, and I shall know that ye can shew me the interpretation thereof. 10 The Chaldeans answered before the king, and said, There is not a man upon the earth that can shew the king's matter: therefore there is no king, lord, nor ruler, that asked such things at any magician, or astrologer, or Chaldean. 11 And it is a rare thing that the king requireth, and there is none other that can shew it before the king, except the gods, whose dwelling is not with flesh.*

- In other words, they're saying: "You're crazy, King."
- There is no one living that can tell you the dream that you forgot.
- And we can't interpret your dream without knowing what it was FIRST.
- They also tell him that anyone in their right mind would ask someone to do this.
- They're like, "Hey, you forgot the dream and now you want us to tell you what it was."
- How do you think the King reacted to this? Let's see.

**[12] Daniel 2:12-13** *For this cause the king was angry and very furious, and commanded to destroy all the wise men of Babylon. 13 And the decree went forth that the wise men should be slain; and they sought Daniel and his fellows to be slain.*

- The KING is very, very angry so he decides to destroy all the wise men of Babylon.
- This included Daniel and all of his people. But Daniel didn't even know what was happening.

**[13] Daniel 2:14-15** *Then Daniel answered with counsel and wisdom to Arioch the captain of the king's guard, which was gone forth to slay the wise men of Babylon: 15 He answered and said to Arioch the king's captain, Why is the decree so hasty from the king? Then Arioch made the thing known to Daniel.*

- This Arioch captain of the King's guard went forth to slay all of the wise men.
- Daniel says, "Hey, what's the haste here? Why are you in such a hurry to kill all the wise men?"
- Arioch answers Daniel and tells him why the King is so upset.
- Daniel takes action next in verse 16.

**[14] Daniel 2:16** *Then Daniel went in, and desired of the king that he would give him time, and that he would shew the king the interpretation.*

- Daniel goes to the King and ask him to give him some time to show the King what he wants.
- Daniel didn't know right away what the King's dream was or the interpretation.
- So what does Daniel do? Let's see.
- And take this as an example when you're in trouble and need God's help.

**[15] Daniel 2:17-18** *Then Daniel went to his house, and made the thing known to Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, his companions: 18 That they would desire mercies of the God of heaven concerning this secret; that Daniel and his fellows should not perish with the rest of the wise men of Babylon.*

- Daniel goes back home and tells his friends that are GODLY MEN.
- Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah are Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego.
- When Daniel needs God's help he also asks his friends to ask God too.
- They're all in trouble and need God's help. Join together and ask God.
- Because of this, let's see what happens next.

**[16] Daniel 2:19** *Then was the secret revealed unto Daniel in a night vision. Then Daniel blessed the God of heaven.*

- God reveals the dream and the interpretation to Daniel.
- Daniel is very happy and begins to bless God and to praise Him.

**[17] Daniel 2:20-23** *Daniel answered and said, Blessed be the name of God for ever and ever: for wisdom and might are his: 21 And he changeth the times and the seasons: he removeth kings, and setteth up kings: he giveth wisdom unto the wise, and knowledge to them that know understanding: 22 He revealeth the deep and secret things: he knoweth what is in the darkness, and the light dwelleth with him. 23 I thank thee, and praise thee, O thou God of my fathers, who hast given me wisdom and might, and hast made known unto me now what we desired of thee: for thou hast now made known unto us the king's matter.*

- No one but God Almighty HIMSELF could have revealed the dream to ANYONE.
- This shows God's great might and power and shows us that He even knows all your dreams.

**[18] Daniel 2:24** *Therefore Daniel went in unto Arioch, whom the king had ordained to destroy the wise men of Babylon: he went and said thus unto him; Destroy not the wise men of Babylon: bring me in before the king, and I will shew unto the king the interpretation.*



- Daniel gets straight to it once he knows the dream.
- He goes to Arioch, the captain of the King's guard, and tells him to not destroy the wise men.
- He says, "I know the dream and what it means!"

***[19] Daniel 2:25 Then Arioch brought in Daniel before the king in haste, and said thus unto him, I have found a man of the captives of Judah, that will make known unto the king the interpretation.***

- You can see that Arioch doesn't want to kill all the wise men and wants the King to know the dream
- Arioch goes in quickly with Daniel and tells the King he found a man of Judah that can tell him the dream

***[20] Daniel 2:26-27 The king answered and said to Daniel, whose name was Belteshazzar, Art thou able to make known unto me the dream which I have seen, and the interpretation thereof? 27 Daniel answered in the presence of the king, and said, The secret which the king hath demanded cannot the wise men, the astrologers, the magicians, the soothsayers, shew unto the king;***

- Remember that Daniel's Babylonian name is Belteshazzar.
- The King asks him, "Can you show me this dream and tell me what it means?"
- Daniel answers and says, "No one else can show you, but here's who can show you."
- Watch what Daniel says here.

***[21] Daniel 2:28 But there is a God in heaven that revealeth secrets, and maketh known to the king Nebuchadnezzar what shall be in the latter days. Thy dream, and the visions of thy head upon thy bed, are these;***

- Daniel says, "I can't show you but God in heaven is the one that has revealed it to me."
- "God is going to make known what shall be in the latter days." In other words, this is FUTURE prophecy.
- Daniel doesn't take the credit. He gives all of that to God HIMSELF.

***[22] Daniel 2:29-30 As for thee, O king, thy thoughts came into thy mind upon thy bed, what should come to pass hereafter: and he that revealeth secrets maketh known to thee what shall come to pass. 30 But as for me, this secret is not revealed to me for any wisdom that I have more than any living, but for their sakes that shall make known the interpretation to the king, and that thou mightest know the thoughts of thy heart.***

- Again, Daniel tells him the dream is about what's going to happen HEREAFTER. The future.
- Daniels says that the secret is not revealed to himself for wisdom but for the sakes of others.
- In other words, the dream has been showed to them so the others won't be killed.
- And it's being shown to the King because God wants him to know these things.

***[23] Daniel 2:31 Thou, O king, sawest, and behold a great image. This great image, whose brightness was excellent, stood before thee; and the form thereof was terrible.***

- This GREAT IMAGE the King saw in his dream was very bright and excellent.
- The form of that image was terrible! Terrible means that it is frightful or excites terror in someone.
- In other words, it's a very scary image. Very bright, excellent, and terrible.

**[24] Daniel 2:32-33** *This image's head was of fine gold, his breast and his arms of silver, his belly and his thighs of brass, 33 His legs of iron, his feet part of iron and part of clay.*

- Visualize the image in your head.
- Head of fine gold. His breast or chest area and arms are silver. His belly and thighs are brass.
- His lower legs of iron. His feet PART iron and PART clay.

**[25] Daniel 2:34-36** *Thou sawest till that a stone was cut out without hands, which smote the image upon his feet that were of iron and clay, and brake them to pieces. 35 Then was the iron, the clay, the brass, the silver, and the gold, broken to pieces together, and became like the chaff of the summer threshingfloors; and the wind carried them away, that no place was found for them: and the stone that smote the image became a great mountain, and filled the whole earth. 36 This is the dream; and we will tell the interpretation thereof before the king.*

- Notice right there at the end that Daniel says, "We will tell the interpretation thereof before the King."
- Whose the "we?" Daniel is including Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego as well as God.
- Why? Because they all joined together in prayer to God so He would reveal this to them.
- Daniel finished telling him exactly what the dream was. Now, he's going to interpret it for him.

**[26] Daniel 2:37** *Thou, O king, art a king of kings: for the God of heaven hath given thee a kingdom, power, and strength, and glory.*

- Daniel starts out the interpretation of the dream by telling the King that he is a king of kings.
- He tells him that GOD OF HEAVEN hath given all of that to him. He didn't earn it himself.
- GOD GAVE IT TO HIM. Without God backing him, he wouldn't have any of that.
- Keep in mind as we continue that this is the interpretation of the dream.

**[27] Daniel 2:38-39** *And wheresoever the children of men dwell, the beasts of the field and the fowls of the heaven hath he given into thine hand, and hath made thee ruler over them all. Thou art this head of gold. 39 And after thee shall arise another kingdom inferior to thee, and another third kingdom of brass, which shall bear rule over all the earth.*

- The sections of this great image represent both a king and their kingdom.
- Daniel tells the King that he is the HEAD OF GOLD. This also represents the entire Babylonian kingdom.
- Verse 39 says, "AFTER THEE SHALL RISE ANOTHER KINGDOM."
- But look, the head of gold is at the top. The next kingdom will be inferior to the Babylonian empire.
- That's the chest and arms that are made of SILVER.
- The belly and thigh is the THIRD KINGDOM which rules over ALL the earth.

**[28] Daniel 2:40** *And the fourth kingdom shall be strong as iron: forasmuch as iron breaketh in pieces and subdueth all things: and as iron that breaketh all these, shall it break in pieces and bruise.*

- We see all 4 kingdoms in this great image.
- The fourth is iron and a strong kingdom.
- Who are the 4 kingdoms? They are talked about in the Book of Daniel.
- 3 of the 4 kingdoms are given to us by name exactly. So we know 3 of the 4.

- The first kingdom is of course Babylon because Daniel tells the King that you are this head of gold.
- The second kingdom consists of the Medes and Persians. Chapters 7, 8, and 11 talk about them.
- The third kingdom is Grecia. Chapters 7, 8, and 11 talk about this third kingdom in detail.
- The fourth kingdom is not mentioned and it's a kingdom in the future.
- God doesn't give us the name of this future kingdom in the Book of Daniel.
- The fourth kingdom is mentioned in the Book of Daniel but not by name.
- This makes this kingdom VERY significant to Bible Prophecy.
- Let's see how this kingdom is described in Daniel Chapter 9.

***[29] Daniel 9:26 And after threescore and two weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary; and the end thereof shall be with a flood, and unto the end of the war desolations are determined.***

- At the time the Book of Daniel was written none of this had happened.
- But now, it's already happened. So we can ask, "Well, who did this in the past?"
- "Who came and destroyed Jerusalem, the city, the temple, and the sanctuary?"
- "Who flooded the area with armies of soldiers and made the area desolate like a flood?"
- The ROMANS did this already in the year 70 AD. They wiped out Jerusalem and the temple.
- Jesus Himself talked about this soon happening and this was their punishment for rejecting Him.
- Right at the beginning of Matthew Chapter 24, you see this:

***[30] Matthew 24:1-2 And Jesus went out, and departed from the temple: and his disciples came to him for to shew him the buildings of the temple. 2 And Jesus said unto them, See ye not all these things? verily I say unto you, There shall not be left here one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down.***

- And this is EXACTLY what happened many years later in 70 AD.
- There was not one stone left upon another and everything was destroyed by the ROMANS.
- Not all people believe the FOURTH KINGDOM is Rome, but it's pretty obvious that it is Rome.
- Why is it easy to prove that the Roman empire is the FOURTH KINGDOM?
- Look at the great image. At the top is Babylon.
- Next is the Medes and Persians. They defeated Babylon.
- Below the Medes and Persians is Grecia. They defeated the Medes and Persians.
- The fourth kingdom of Rome defeated the Greeks and took over.
- There is no other that defeated the Romans.
- If it follows the same pattern, this makes perfect sense and it all fits together.
- There's also more proof that it's the Romans.

***[31] Daniel 2:40 And the fourth kingdom shall be strong as iron: forasmuch as iron breaketh in pieces and subdueth all things: and as iron that breaketh all these, shall it break in pieces and bruise.***

- The Romans were known for being as strong as iron.
- They would crush their enemies into pieces and subdue them.
- They were known for being very brutal to their enemies. They would destroy them completely.

There are many false preachers, academics, and scholars who will say the 4<sup>th</sup> kingdom is Greece.

- We know the 3<sup>rd</sup> kingdom is Greece so how in the world is the 4<sup>th</sup> kingdom Greece?

- These are the same people (mostly in the religion of Judaism) who don't believe the Bible is true.
- They believe much of it is a fairy tale.
- They'll say that the Book of Daniel was written in the second century BC.
- We have copies of the book of Daniel from at least the second century BC.
- Do you know what their proof is that the FOURTH KINGDOM isn't Rome?
- They say, "Well, it can't be Rome because the Roman empire hadn't taken over yet and they weren't even known about at that time."
- In other words, they don't believe God can tell us about the future before it happens!!!
- Judaism doesn't even believe in the ONE TRUE GOD.
- Everyone thinks they believe in the Old Testament and especially in the first 5 Books of Moses.
- But guess what Jesus says about the Jews? Listen to this.

***[32] John 5:45-46 Do not think that I will accuse you to the Father: there is one that accuseth you, even Moses, in whom ye trust. 46 For had ye believed Moses, ye would have believed me: for he wrote of me.***

- Jesus says, "If you actually believed what Moses says, you would believe me."
- In other words, the religion of Judaism claims to believe what Moses says but Jesus says they don't.
- If you ask the Jews who practice Judaism about the Books of Moses, they will tell you that they are just stories and they didn't actually happen.
- So there's no way they believe the Book of Daniel predicted the Roman empire as the FOURTH KINGDOM.
- They also WILL NOT acknowledge the coming of Jesus Christ during that fourth kingdom reign.
- Do you see why that fourth kingdom is so important? It's when Jesus Christ came to Earth.
- So, of course, the Jews who HATE Jesus will deny the Roman Empire as the FOURTH KINGDOM.

As you can see, the religion of Judaism does what all the other FALSE RELIGIONS of this world do.

- They pick and choose what they want to make the Bible say.
- They will take any part of the Bible that doesn't MATCH with their religion and turn it into something else.
- Catholics do the same thing as they are one of the worst.
- For example, they pick and choose the 10 commandments.

***[33] Exodus 20:4 Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth:***

- They want to just combine the second commandment with the first commandment and act like they aren't worshipping anything other than God.
- Well, the second commandment is NOT the first commandment.
- In other words, we aren't supposed to make ANY GRAVEN IMAGE at all in the likeness of ANY THING in heaven, in earth, or beneath the earth. Graven means anything that is made, carved, shaped, formed.
- Do they follow that commandment? Oh no. Not even close. They have statues everywhere.
- They bow down and pray to these statues.

[SLIDES 34, 35, 36]

- They say that these GRAVEN IMAGES aren't other gods. They always have an excuse.
- But look what the BIBLE SAYS!!! It doesn't matter what excuse is made.
- The BIBLE SAYS, "You SHALT NOT make unto thee ANY GRAVEN IMAGE!!!" Is that not clear enough?

- Yet, we make excuses for the Cross. Does the Bible ever say it's okay to use the cross anywhere?
- You might say, "Well, we aren't worshipping the cross."
- And I say, "Well, you put it at the front of the churches. You put at the top of the Church."
- And God says, "I don't care. I said DON'T MAKE ANY GRAVEN IMAGE!!!"
- Catholics also take other commandments and change those as well.
- "Thou shalt not covet becomes thou shalt no covet thy neighbor's wife."
- In other words, they change the word of God into whatever they want it to be.
- And that's pure evil. There is nothing worse than that. That's evil.
- And guess what? It's not just the Catholics. It's most churches around here.
- "We don't like the part that says women can't be deacons so we're going to change that part."
- You know what? I feel bad for those people. God will DESTROY them! Don't be a part of that.
- There are 10 commandments. God made them. There's not 8 or 9. There's 10. And His words are clear.
- We don't compromise here, and we don't change God's words.

The religion of Judaism wants to CONFUSE people here in the Book of Daniel by changing God's words.

- Why? Because the Book of Daniel is absolutely AMAZING!
- Why is it so amazing? Because it FULFILLS the Prophecies in great detail within this book.
- I've heard so-called false preachers call themselves prophets.
- Do you know what their prophecy for the year happened to be?
- Here it is: "Something big is going to happen this year. Something big."
- Wow, what a great prophecy false preacher man.
- Does the Book of Daniel give a little more detail than that? Does the entire Bible?
- Oh yes, we get great detail. God doesn't just say something big is going to happen. Anybody can do that.
- What's the definition of big? It could be anything that happens. "See, I told you!!! I was right."
- That's a joke. These false prophets can't even get the Gospel of Jesus Christ right.
- Daniel says, "Hey, this is what's going to happen EXACTLY. This is when the MESSIAH is coming."
- The Jews won't accept what Daniel said because they think the Messiah isn't here yet.
- They say Jesus is a FALSE MESSIAH. That means they have to change the Book of Daniel.

This is 100% TRUTH

- The Messiah came BEFORE their temple was destroyed in 70 AD.
- The Jews split the Medes and the Persians into two kingdoms in this image and say Greece is the fourth.
- "That's the consensus," they'll say. That's what all these idiot scholars say.
- One so-called SCHOLAR said, "Well, there's only about 16 verses out of 31,102 verses that condemn homosexuality so it can't be that important."
- EVERY WORD is important! That's the truth.
- So remember, the Jews say the Medes are Kingdom #2 and the Persians are Kingdom #3. Well, let's see.

**[37] Daniel 5:28 PERES; Thy kingdom is divided, and given to the Medes and Persians.**

- When Babylon is defeated, the Kingdom is divided at the same time and given to the MEDES AND THE PERSIANS.
- It doesn't go to one first and then to the other. It goes to both. And that's what actually happened.
- The Medes and the Persians ruled at the same time. There are TWO ARMS on the great image.
- In Daniel Chapter 7, it talks about a bear that is raised up to one side.

**[38] Daniel 7:5 And behold another beast, a second, like to a bear, and it raised up itself on one side, and it had three ribs in the mouth of it between the teeth of it: and they said thus unto it, Arise, devour much flesh.**

- This is because the PERSIANS were much more powerful than the Medes.
- The bear is raised more on one side because it's unbalances between those 2 kingdoms.
- In Daniel Chapter 8, this divided kingdom is symbolized by a RAM. And see this:

**[39] Daniel 8:3 Then I lifted up mine eyes, and saw, and, behold, there stood before the river a ram which had two horns: and the two horns were high; but one was higher than the other, and the higher came up last.**

- Notice that ONE HORN is higher than the other.
- There's proof that the Medes and Persians are the SECOND KINGDOM.
- They aren't split into the second and third part of that image.
- FIRST KINGDOM = BABYLON
- SECOND KINGDOM = MEDES AND PERSIANS
- THIRD KINGDOM = GREECE
- FOURTH KINGDOM = ROME
- And that's exactly how it happened in history too. It's that simple.

God's Bible Prophecies have application for that time and for the future. It's amazing!

- The prophecy is applied to that time and to a future time. Very important to understand.
- This type of application is found from Genesis to Revelation all throughout the Bible.
- I want to give you an example of Abraham when he offers Isaac on the altar.
- Abraham PROPHESES when he speaks to Isaac when Isaac asks where's the LAMB to sacrifice?
- He didn't understand that he was the sacrifice.

**[40] Genesis 22:8 And Abraham said, My son, God will provide himself a lamb for a burnt offering: so they went both of them together.**

- When we read this verse, we think that Abraham is saying that God will provide the sacrifice at this time.
- Abraham is actually prophesying about the coming of the LORD JESUS CHRIST.
- "God will provide HIMSELF A LAMB." In other words, God will provide HIMSELF who is the LAMB OF GOD.
- But look, God also provides an immediate fulfillment of that by providing a sacrifice for Abraham.
- Abraham was willing to sacrifice HIS ONLY SON but God stopped him and provided the sacrifice.
- But what did God provide to Abraham at that time? Let's see. Was it a lamb?

**[41] Genesis 22:13 And Abraham lifted up his eyes, and looked, and behold behind him a ram caught in a thicket by his horns: and Abraham went and took the ram, and offered him up for a burnt offering in the stead of his son.**

- It wasn't a lamb. This shows us CLEARLY that this is a DUAL FULFILLMENT PROPHECY.
- There was an immediate application to that time and a future application.
- God made it a RAM so we would notice that it's not a LAMB like Abraham said. He gave us a clue.

**[42] John 1:29 The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.**



- We know that Jesus Christ is the LAMB OF GOD. He is the sacrifice for all sins.
- There's all types of examples from the Bible.
- The Book of Jonah is another example of this type of prophecy.
- There's immediate fulfillment but there's also future fulfillment of what Jonah says.
- Jonah talks about descending into hell but he was only in the whale's belly.
- Jesus HIMSELF talks about this in Matthew Chapter 12.

***[43] Matthew 12:40 For as Jonas was three days and three nights in the whale's belly; so shall the Son of man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.***

- There are hundreds of examples of this all throughout the Bible.
- Jeremiah Chapter 50 and 51 is a prophecy about the Destruction of Babylon.
- They didn't believe it because everything was going great for that empire at the time.
- The Medes and the Persians fulfilled that prophecy when they defeated Babylon.
- That prophecy wasn't fulfilled EXACTLY how it was described in the book of Jeremiah.
- Just like it wasn't fulfilled exactly in the Book of Genesis with Abraham and Isaac.
- Jeremiah 50 and 51 will be a FUTURE fulfillment of the destruction of Babylon.
- It's talked about in the Book of Revelation.
- There's another BABYLON that will be destroyed in the future and that hasn't happened yet.
- You can compare Jeremiah 50 and 51 to Revelation 18. You'll see the relation quickly.
- There was immediate fulfillment with Jeremiah but much of it is pointing to a future fulfillment.
- And guess what? All of that will be fulfilled perfectly in the future. That's a clue given by God.
- So prophecy throughout the Bible is like this.
- Dual fulfillment is a BASIC of understanding prophecies in the Bible. It's something we must understand.

Why are we talking about this DUAL FULFILLMENT of Bible Prophecy?

- Because this FOURTH KINGDOM has a dual fulfillment.
- We must understand this to understand the Book of Daniel properly.
- The immediate fulfillment back then was THE ROMAN EMPIRE, the Iron Empire.
- The Romans destroyed everyone else.
- There's going to be a FUTURE KINGDOM that fulfills this fourth kingdom prophecy perfectly.
- The Book of Revelation shows us that it's coming.

***[44] Revelation 12:3 And there appeared another wonder in heaven; and behold a great red dragon, having seven heads and ten horns, and seven crowns upon his heads.***

- We see TEN HORNS and we also see this in the Book of Daniel.
- The phrase "TEN HORNS" is in Daniel Chapter 7 THREE times and Revelation 6 times (CH 12, 13, and 17).
- And that's it. It's no where else in the Bible. Just Daniel and Revelation.
- The fourth kingdom is Rome in the immediate fulfillment but will be a great one world government in the future prophecy.
- I want to go back to Daniel Chapter 2 and continue in verse 41.
- We're going to see the FOURTH KINGDOM described in more detail.
- And notice when we read this that there isn't a FIFTH KINGDOM. There's FOUR.
- In Daniel Chapter 7, there are 4 beasts that represent the four kingdoms as well. So we know there's 4.

**[45] Daniel 2:40-42** *And the fourth kingdom shall be strong as iron: forasmuch as iron breaketh in pieces and subdueth all things: and as iron that breaketh all these, shall it break in pieces and bruise. 41 And whereas thou sawest the feet and toes, part of potters' clay, and part of iron, the kingdom shall be divided; but there shall be in it of the strength of the iron, forasmuch as thou sawest the iron mixed with miry clay. 42 And as the toes of the feet were part of iron, and part of clay, so the kingdom shall be partly strong, and partly broken.*

- We see that the legs and the feet make up the fourth and final kingdom.
- The feet and toes are part potters clay and part iron so the kingdom is partly strong and partly broken.
- And notice there are 10 toes, right? We all have 10 toes or supposed to anyway.
- In Revelation, we see 10 horns that represent 10 rulers who are ruling at the same time.
- The clay represents weakness and the iron represents the strength. That's it.
- Did you know that some false religions take this PART IRON and PART CLAY as some kind of alien?
- Yeah, it's very weird stuff from some weird mind. But let's continue.

**[46] Daniel 2:43** *And whereas thou sawest iron mixed with miry clay, they shall mingle themselves with the seed of men: but they shall not cleave one to another, even as iron is not mixed with clay.*

- We know that iron and clay does not mix.
- We learn that this fourth kingdom will be mixed together biologically.
- BUT they will not cleave one to another. This has happened all throughout history.
- Joseph marries an Egyptian. Judah married a Canaanite. Moses married an Ethiopian woman.
- In other words, different kingdoms will come together but they won't STICK together.
- There are still all different nationalities PHYSICALLY. We've been mixing but we're still distinct.
- There will be more powerful leaders in the kingdom and weaker kingdoms.
- Just like in the United Nations today. There are weaker kingdoms and very strong kingdoms.
- And this is just like if you tried to mix iron and clay together.

**[47] Daniel 2:44** *And in the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom, which shall never be destroyed: and the kingdom shall not be left to other people, but it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand for ever.*

- We learn a dual fulfillment prophecy of Jesus coming and setting up a kingdom of believers.
- And we also will see God come in Revelation and set up HIS KINGDOM.
- God's kingdom will NEVER be destroyed. I want to be a part of that kingdom.
- And I am because I believe on the Lord Jesus Christ. And you can be a part of that kingdom the same way.

**[48] Daniel 2:45** *Forasmuch as thou sawest that the stone was cut out of the mountain without hands, and that it brake in pieces the iron, the brass, the clay, the silver, and the gold; the great God hath made known to the king what shall come to pass hereafter: and the dream is certain, and the interpretation thereof sure.*

- The gold kingdom ended because the silver kingdom took over.
- The silver kingdom ended because the bronze kingdom took over.
- The bronze kingdom ended because the iron kingdom took over.
- How does the iron kingdom end? We see it right here.
- This stone that is cut out of the mountain without hands comes and BREAKS it into pieces.



- And not just the fourth kingdom BUT all of it. All kingdoms are wiped out completely by this stone.

What's this stone that is cut out of the mountains and has no hands?

- We know that this STONE is the Lord Jesus Christ.
- Why? Because this is God's Kingdom that is being setup and shall stand forever!
- That stone is within the mountain that is God's Kingdom.
- He comes out of it and destroys the other kingdoms.

***[49] Daniel 7:13-14 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him. 14 And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.***

- Jesus Christ comes in the clouds and is given an everlasting kingdom in Daniel Chapter 7.
- We're 100% sure that this stone that comes out of the mountains is Jesus Christ.
- Do you see the parallels here?
- Jesus comes out of God's kingdom represented by mountains in Daniel Chapter 2.
- Jesus came during the ROMAN rule of the fourth kingdom.
- He didn't come physically and defeat the Romans but He setup a SPIRITUAL KINGDOM.
- Then in Daniel Chapter 7, Jesus comes in the clouds and sets up an eternal kingdom once and for all.
- There's a first coming of Jesus Christ. That already happened.
- Then there's going to be a second coming of Jesus Christ. That hasn't happened yet.
- But this second coming will include a PHYSICAL KINGDOM THIS TIME!!!
- The first coming was to setup a spiritual kingdom that is everlasting and the second coming will be a physical everlasting kingdom.

***[50] Revelation 19:15 And out of his mouth goeth a sharp sword, that with it he should smite the nations: and he shall rule them with a rod of iron: and he treadeth the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God.***

- This fourth kingdom that is coming in the future will be the Anti-Christ, the false prophet, and the miracles and wonders they will do. This is taught to us in Revelation 13 and 17.
- People will be deceived. But we won't be deceived. This is what should be taught in Churches but isn't.
- Jesus will come back and DESTROY that powerful fourth kingdom in the future as well. PHYSICALLY!!!
- Jesus comes back and physically defeats their armies.
- Symbolically He defeats everything that represents these worldly kingdoms:
- Babylon, Persia, Greece, and Rome.
- For example, Rome was a very nasty and wicked place. Our so-called "PROGRESSIVE" country is heading right back to those wicked ways.
- We're not progressive. We're getting worse. We're going back to the ways of these worldly kingdoms.
- We're headed to a one world government just as the Book of Revelation describes.
- And that one world government won't be exactly like the Romans, but it will be similar.
- Peace will be taken from the earth! People will be killing each other. It's not going to be good.
- Violence, war, famine, disease, and death.
- Let's go back to Daniel Chapter 2 and continue in verse 46.
- Daniel is now finished with his interpretation of the dream.

- Let's see what happens.

***[51] Daniel 2:46 Then the king Nebuchadnezzar fell upon his face, and worshipped Daniel, and commanded that they should offer an oblation and sweet odours unto him.***

- King Nebuchadnezzar is very happy with Daniel.
- This is the great king of this time falling on his face and worshipping Daniel.
- He wants to give Daniel rewards immediately.

***[52] Daniel 2:47 The king answered unto Daniel, and said, Of a truth it is, that your God is a God of gods, and a Lord of kings, and a revealer of secrets, seeing thou couldest reveal this secret.***

- The king finally realizes that Daniel's GOD is THE GOD of gods.
- He continues to believe in other gods but he sees that the GOD OF HEAVEN is THE GOD!
- No one else could do this. Only the one true God.

***[53] Daniel 2:48 Then the king made Daniel a great man, and gave him many great gifts, and made him ruler over the whole province of Babylon, and chief of the governors over all the wise men of Babylon.***

- Now Daniel becomes a GREAT MAN in the Kingdom of Babylon.
- Even though God's people had been punished through these other rulers, God raises the ones who continue to obey Him.
- God did this for Daniel. He raised Daniel up because Daniel loved God by following His commandments.
- Daniel becomes ruler over the whole province of Babylon and CHIEF of all the governors.
- He is now over ALL THE WISE men of Babylon.
- And now watch what Daniel does.

***[54] Daniel 2:49 Then Daniel requested of the king, and he set Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, over the affairs of the province of Babylon: but Daniel sat in the gate of the king.***

- Daniel doesn't forget about Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego.
- He requests that they be setup over the affairs of Babylon as well.
- Daniel stayed there in the GATE OF THE KING as a ruler.

If we want to understand Daniel Chapter 2 much better, we should study two other chapters.

- Revelation Chapter 13
- Revelation Chapter 17
- And we'll do that as we go through the Book of Revelation verse by verse.

Let's pray.

## SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 3

[2] The title of the sermon today is "DANIEL CHAPTER 3."

- We'll go through Daniel Chapter 3 today verse by verse.
- And remember what we learned in the Daniel Chapter 2 sermon.
- Daniel Chapter through Daniel Chapter 7 are written in SYRIACK or ARAMAIC.
- Then we see a pattern for Chapters 2 through 7.
- In Chapter 3, today, we'll see people sentenced to death.
- We'll see the same thing in Daniel Chapter 6.

2	3	4	5	6	7
A	B	C	C	B	A

- Chapter 2 is about 4 kingdoms of the Earth being destroyed by GOD'S ETERNAL KINGDOM.
- You'll see that again in Chapter 7. So keep this pattern in mind as we study through Chapter 7.

**[3] Daniel 3:1 *Nebuchadnezzar the king made an image of gold, whose height was threescore cubits, and the breadth thereof six cubits: he set it up in the plain of Dura, in the province of Babylon.***

- We see King Nebuchadnezzar here in verse 1 making a false image for people to worship.
- So remember the history of the Bible and where we are here in the Book of Daniel.
- After King Solomon, Israel split into the Northern Kingdom and Southern Kingdom.
- The Northern Kingdom is Israel. Southern Kingdom is Judah.
- The Northern Kingdom gets conquered by the Assyrians and becomes Samaritans.
- The Southern Kingdom of Judah is carried away into Babylon. Babylon is a city but also an empire.
- And that's where we are here in the Book of Daniel. The JEWS from Judah are in Babylon.
- Daniel was brought there as a young child there in Chapter 1 of Daniel.
- So now we see King Nebuchadnezzar setting up a false god.
- And remember what we saw in Chapter 2. Daniel had just revealed prophecy to that same king.
- Daniel just told him about the ONE TRUE GOD and proved that there is ONLY ONE TRUE GOD.
- At the end of Chapter 2 we see this from King Nebuchadnezzar.

**[4] Daniel 2:47 *The king answered unto Daniel, and said, Of a truth it is, that your God is a God of gods, and a Lord of kings, and a revealer of secrets, seeing thou couldest reveal this secret.***

- So he admits that Daniel's GOD is a GOD of gods.
- But you see that he continues to believe in other false gods too. Same thing with people today.
- They'll admit that there's the ONE TRUE GOD but they won't give up all the others.
- Let's continue in Chapter 3 verse 2.

**[5] Daniel 3:2 *Then Nebuchadnezzar the king sent to gather together the princes, the governors, and the captains, the judges, the treasurers, the counsellors, the sheriffs, and all the rulers of the provinces, to come to the dedication of the image which Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up.***

- This Chapter 3 is a VERY IMPORTANT part of the Bible that we need to understand today.
- This chapter is the story of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego in the FIERY FURNACE.
- Why is this chapter in Daniel so important?
- In Revelation Chapter 13, you'll see the Anti-Christ with his false prophet.
- They set up an IMAGE or a false god for people to worship.
- And, whoever will not worship that IMAGE, will be killed.
- It is written in Revelation Chapter 13 and that means IT WILL 100% HAPPEN IN THE FUTURE.
- We see the same thing happen in Daniel Chapter 3.

The first half of Daniel, Chapters 1 through 6, are filled with stories about people worshipping false gods.

- God's people, within the BOOK OF DANIEL, REFUSE to worship those false gods.
- The Book of Daniel is written to prepare us for the end times.
- If it doesn't happen during our lifetime, our children and their children need to be PREPARED.
- That's why we are teaching this today BECAUSE it's VERY IMPORTANT.
- MEN OF GOD, in Daniel, stand up and would rather BURN to death than give into a false god.
- They didn't let SATAN force them to do something.
- NEVER let someone FORCE YOU to worship a false god. And don't do it passively either.
- For example, don't attend a church that is preaching a false god that doesn't match this BIBLE.
- GOD ALMIGHTY, the one in this BIBLE, wants you to worship HIM ALONE.

**[6] Exodus 34:14 For thou shalt worship no other god: for the LORD, whose name is Jealous, is a jealous God:**

- Jesus repeats the same thing in the NEW TESTAMENT when He says:
- "Thou shalt worship the LORD THY GOD, and HIM ONLY SHALT THOU SERVE!!!"

In Daniel Chapter 3 verse 2, we see that all the princes, governors, captains, judges, treasurers, counsellors, sheriffs, and all the rulers MUST come to the dedication of this FALSE GOD.

- They better make the KING happy because he is their ruler. He is their government.
- Does that sound familiar to you in today's world?
- If you want to be at this very high level in today's world, many times, you have to worship SATAN.
- King Nebuchadnezzar wants to make sure everyone with power in his kingdom is worshipping SATAN.
- There are RULERS all over this country and all over this world that are ruled BY SATAN HIMSELF.
- Any you might not believe that today, but I'll show you some things after you see this verse.

**[7] Ephesians 6:12 For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.**

- Notice the RULERS OF DARKNESS of this world. They exist in this world. Open your eyes, and you'll see.
- Have you ever heard of the Bohemian Grove in California?
- It's about 2,000 acres where they worship the false God MOLECH.

**[8] Leviticus 18:21 And thou shalt not let any of thy seed pass through the fire to Molech, neither shalt thou profane the name of thy God: I am the LORD.**

- If you think this is something small, you should hear about who visits there OFTEN.
- Many Presidents of OUR COUNTRY have visited there before and after their presidency.

- Here are some of the presidents who have been there:
- Ronald Reagan, George Bush, Bill Clinton, George W. Bush, Barack Obama.
- Leaders from other countries visit there too. Dick Cheney, Newt Gingrich. CIA directors.
- Arnold Schwarzenegger, David Rockefeller. They all worship a 40-foot tall OWL.
- They have a MOCK HUMAN being sacrificed during their rituals.
- Men dress up like women. Sometimes they wear all black garments with hoods.
- Here's a picture from one of their ceremonies:

[9]

This place is like a RITE OF PASSAGE for the Presidents of our country.

- This isn't a joke either. It's crazy stuff. And it's real all around us TODAY. It will get worse.
- Do you really think the smartest and best people become the leaders of our country?
- How do you think they get there? They are willing to sell their souls to SATAN.
- That's what really happens. They worship the devil.
- They constantly go against JESUS, against God. Why do you think the Bible can't be mentioned in schools?
- This image you see on the screen is similar to the image that Nebuchadnezzar setup.

Back to Daniel Chapter 3.

- In verse 1 we see that the image is three score cubits tall. 60 cubits or 90 feet tall.
- But notice how it's very similar to the Bohemian Grove in California.
- Notice they have their image setup out in the plan of Dura the Bible says.
- So it's out in the middle of a plain or away from all the people.
- And look who is invited!!! All the elite rulers of BABYLON. It's exactly like that Bohemian Grove.
- It's hidden away so they can all worship SATAN and bow down to an idol.
- I just wanted you to see that TODAY. And there's more examples than just that.
- There's all types of DEVIL WORSHIPPING going on throughout this country. It would make you sick.
- Let's continue in verse 3 of Daniel Chapter 3.

**[10] Daniel 3:3-5 Then the princes, the governors, and captains, the judges, the treasurers, the counsellors, the sheriffs, and all the rulers of the provinces, were gathered together unto the dedication of the image that Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up; and they stood before the image that Nebuchadnezzar had set up. 4 Then an herald cried aloud, To you it is commanded, O people, nations, and languages, 5 That at what time ye hear the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, dulcimer, and all kinds of musick, ye fall down and worship the golden image that Nebuchadnezzar the king hath set up:**

- Notice what it says there in verse 4: "To you it is commanded O people, nations, languages."
- So they have all these leaders representing many different people, nations, and languages there.
- In Revelation 13, we see that all people who are REJECTED by God will bow down and worship the false god.

**[11] Revelation 13:8 And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.**

- This is a very similar picture to the end times prophecy in the Bible.
- I want you to see this comparison between Daniel and Revelation.

- And keep in mind that Revelation and Daniel go hand in hand for end times prophecy.
- Back to Daniel 3 verse 6.

***[12] Daniel 3:6 And whoso falleth not down and worshippeth shall the same hour be cast into the midst of a burning fiery furnace.***

- In Daniel, if you don't fall down and worship this false god, you will be thrown into the fiery furnace.
- Remember that SATAN imitates everything God does and DECEIVES people.
- The Book of Daniel and the entire Bible gets us ready for this.
- If you're constantly in the word of God, you'll see the deception MUCH faster!!!
- The fiery furnace is Satan's imitation of God's Hell.
- The anti-Christ is Satan's imitation of JESUS CHRIST.
- The false prophet is Satan's imitation of God's true prophet.
- The mark of the beast is an imitation of God's mark on the 144,000 in their foreheads.
- Satan says, "If you don't worship me, I'll throw you in my imitation of hell with this fiery furnace."

***[13] Daniel 3:7 Therefore at that time, when all the people heard the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and all kinds of musick, all the people, the nations, and the languages, fell down and worshipped the golden image that Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up.***

- So ALL PEOPLE of all nations and languages fell down and worshipped.
- Was it every single person in Babylon? No, it sure wasn't everyone of them. It wasn't 100% of the people.
- But all types of people, nations, and languages were represented.

***[14] Daniel 3:8-9 Wherefore at that time certain Chaldeans came near, and accused the Jews. 9 They spake and said to the king Nebuchadnezzar, O king, live for ever.***

- The Chaldeans came and accused the Jews. So you have these people coming to suck up to the King.
- "O KING LIVE FOR EVER. The Jews aren't doing what you said."
- And notice it calls them JEWS because they came from the Southern Kingdom of JUDAH.
- But let's see which of the JEWS were being accused. Verse 10.

***[15] Daniel 3:10-12 Thou, O king, hast made a decree, that every man that shall hear the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and dulcimer, and all kinds of musick, shall fall down and worship the golden image: 11 And whoso falleth not down and worshippeth, that he should be cast into the midst of a burning fiery furnace. 12 There are certain Jews whom thou hast set over the affairs of the province of Babylon, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego; these men, O king, have not regarded thee: they serve not thy gods, nor worship the golden image which thou hast set up.***

- Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego were Daniel's 3 very good friends.
- Because they helped Daniel in interpreting King Nebuchadnezzar's dream, he had made them rulers.
- But they aren't bowing down and worshipping the false god as the king commanded them to do.
- Also notice that Daniel isn't mentioned here. So was Daniel bowing down to the false god?
- Let me answer that. NO, HE WASN'T. It doesn't say he wasn't, but he's not a part of this chapter here.

DANIEL is rock-solid when it comes to God. Daniel would NEVER bow down to a false god.

- You'll see that DANIEL is very consistent and served God his entire life.
- Like I've said before, I would love to be 1/100 of Daniel in this Bible here.
- And that's a lesson for all of us in this BOOK OF DANIEL.
- We need to be consistent for life. It's a MARATHON. It's not a sprint. It's a LIFETIME.
- It's not a firework where you light the wick and then it fizzles out.
- It's not a HUGE firework that goes off with a bang and then it's gone.
- IT IS LIKE A RIVER than never dries up. It just keeps on running along and never QUILTS. Never stops.
- If you come here to this Church, you have NO EXCUSE to not continue coming.
- You'll learn more in one sermon here than you'll learn in 10 sermons at most other churches.
- And that's not praise for us. All we do is study the Bible. Other churches won't study the Bible.
- So it's rather easy to learn 10 more times here in one sermon.
- But don't come here once or twice and then FIZZLE OUT like one of those fireworks.
- Be consistent for a lifetime like DANIEL. That's what I want to be like.
- Serve God this year, next year, 5 years, 10 years, 20 years, 50 years from now.

So, where was Daniel why all the leaders were out worshipping the FALSE GOD?

- The most likely explanation is he was VERY HIGH in the kingdom:
- So he was most likely left to run things while the others left to go out to this dedication of a false image.
- Some of the rulers had to be left in place to continue running the large kingdom of Babylon.
- So now it's time for SHADRACH, MESHACH, and ABEDNEGO to stand up on their own without DANIEL.
- You can say DANIEL prepared them to stand up on their own.
- Same thing with all of us. WE WILL PREPARE TO STAND UP AGAINST FALSE GODS.
- If your husband or wife isn't with you, will you stand up on your own?
- If your dad or mom isn't with you, will you stand up on your own?

We MUST prepare each other, our children, and everyone we can through the BIBLE.

- Shadrach, Meshach, Abednego were prepared. They KNEW GOD on their own without DANIEL.
- In other words, get to know GOD yourself without someone else doing everything for you.
- That's what we're learning here. CHILDREN growing up in CHURCH need to do the same.
- Don't rely on your parents to do everything for you. STAND UP and take responsibility.
- This is what Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego did right here in Daniel Chapter 3.
- If those children don't stand up on their own, then when they leave the home, what's going to happen?
- They won't stand on their OWN IN FAITH. Children, don't depend on your parents for everything.
- There's a point in your life where you need to read your Bibles on your own. See what God teaches you.
- If you can understand what I'm saying right now, then you're old enough to SEEK GOD.

**[16] 2 Chronicles 12:14 And he did evil, because he prepared not his heart to seek the LORD.**

**[17] Deuteronomy 4:29 But if from thence thou shalt seek the LORD thy God, thou shalt find him, if thou seek him with all thy heart and with all thy soul.**

- God commands us to SEEK HIM all throughout the Bible.
- How do you seek after God? Being here is a great step in that.
- But more importantly, read the Bible on your own. Pray on your own all throughout the day.
- Do your best to learn exactly what God wants from you by STUDYING HIS WORD.
- And that's what we're doing right now.



- Read the Bible AND NOT because someone is making you do it.
- You should want to read it and study it so you learn more about GOD who gave you life.
- You should want to make Him happy. If you don't know how to make God happy, you do now.
- Reading and studying your Bible will ALWAYS make God happy.
- Back to Daniel Chapter 3 verse 13.

***[18] Daniel 3:13-14 Then Nebuchadnezzar in his rage and fury commanded to bring Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego. Then they brought these men before the king. 14 Nebuchadnezzar spake and said unto them, Is it true, O Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, do not ye serve my gods, nor worship the golden image which I have set up?***

- The king questions Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego in HIS FURY AND RAGE.
- He continues to blabber on questioning these 3 MEN OF GOD.
- Let's see what happens. Verse 15.

***[19] Daniel 3:15 Now if ye be ready that at what time ye hear the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and dulcimer, and all kinds of musick, ye fall down and worship the image which I have made; well: but if ye worship not, ye shall be cast the same hour into the midst of a burning fiery furnace; and who is that God that shall deliver you out of my hands?***

- So he tells them: "NOW IF YE BE READY." He's giving them a second chance. "NOW DO IT," he says.
- And if not, "I'll throw you into the fiery furnace."
- And then he says, "What God is going to deliver you out of my hands???"
- You can see where he's angry. He mocks their God, the one true God.
- "Whose your God???" he asks. "Bow down and worship my false god and everything will be okay."
- He's saying, "Hey, it's simple. All you have to do is bow down to Satan and everything will be fine."
- And that's what the world does to us today. "Hey, it's just a beer. It will be okay. It's fun. You'll love it."

"Hey, we're just saying that you MUST have a relationship with Jesus to make it to heaven. That's all."

- "We're Baptist. It's okay." That's a FALSE GOSPEL. It's not okay. You're sending people to hell.
- Other churches will say that you MUST obey God the rest of your life to be saved. "You must be baptized."
- That's a false GOSPEL. It's not okay. That's a WORKS BASED SALVATION.
- All the churches around here want to be accepted no matter what. "We believe in Jesus," they say.
- When it comes down to the truth, they don't believe in Jesus.
- They won't believe what HE SAYS in the Bible. FALSE PREACHING IS NOT OKAY. Don't accept LIES.
- Don't let them talk you into something that's a lie. That's what King Nebuchadnezzar is doing right there.
- But watch what Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego say right here.
- EVERYONE IN THIS COUNTRY TODAY needs to take note of their response.

***[20] Daniel 3:16 Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, answered and said to the king, O Nebuchadnezzar, we are not careful to answer thee in this matter.***

- That right there is one of my FAVORITE VERSES in all the Bible.
- They aren't trying to be politically correct. They aren't trying to choose their words carefully.
- When it comes to worshipping a false god, there is NO COMPROMISE AT ALL. Understand that today.
- "WE ARE NOT CAREFUL TO ANSWER THEE IN THIS MATTER."



- For other things, they would be more careful to answer. BUT NOT when it comes to this.
- And that's EXACTLY how we need to be in this world today.
- We can be more careful on other subjects BUT NOT on worshipping a FALSE GOD.
- They were more careful in Daniel Chapter 1 with the food and drink from the King.
- They requested that they not eat it and was allowed. They didn't DEMAND IT. They were careful.
- It wasn't a good thing, but WORSHIPPING A FALSE GOD is NUMBER ONE "I WILL NOT."

In other words, the world doesn't understand why you don't want to drink alcohol.

- So you wouldn't YELL AND SCREAM at someone who offers you alcohol because they don't understand.
- You would try to explain to them from the Bible why you don't drink alcohol.
- Or, you would explain why you don't want to listen to RAP music. Or false Christian music.
- Or, you would explain why you don't wear short shorts and expose your nakedness as defined by GOD in the Bible.
- You wouldn't rip their heads off because they don't understand the Bible. You would be kind.
- You would explain it to them. You would make a request that they listen and understand.
- BUT NOT WITH WORSHIPPING A FALSE GOD. That's clearly wicked. Same thing with MURDER.
- In other words, you shouldn't be careful when it comes to that.
- CLEAR WICKEDNESS doesn't receive a careful answer.
- ABORTION is murder. We're not careful to answer that. We straight up say "THAT'S MURDER. PERIOD."
- Stand up and say NO when you need to stand up and say NO.
- And watch what they say next in verse 17.

***[21] Daniel 3:17 If it be so, our God whom we serve is able to deliver us from the burning fiery furnace, and he will deliver us out of thine hand, O king.***

- "IF IT BE SO, OUR GOD IS ABLE TO DELIVER US."
- They bring this up because King Nebuchadnezzar brought it up. "Who is YOUR GOD???" he asked them.
- They didn't know FOR SURE that God would save them. They said, "IF IT BE SO."
- And you won't know if God will save you in any specific situation either.
- But it doesn't matter. YOU NEVER COMPROMISE in a situation like this. EVER. You're saved.
- No matter what happens CHOOSE GOD always. End of discussion. GOD ALONE ALWAYS.
- Understand that your life here might be over BUT it's not over. BE READY TO GIVE YOUR LIFE for God.
- Let's continue in verse 18. This is another great verse.

***[22] Daniel 3:18 But if not, be it known unto thee, O king, that we will not serve thy gods, nor worship the golden image which thou hast set up.***

- This king is mad because he can't make them do what he wants them to do.
- That's why God's design is perfect and amazing. He made it where you have a choice.
- Some people make the excuse: "Well, I didn't have a choice. I had to do it."
- No, you didn't. Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego didn't do it and then made an excuse.
- They said, "If God doesn't deliver us from this fiery furnace, UNDERSTAND that we will NOT worship a golden image." WE WILL NOT DO IT.
- You see: they knew the Book of Exodus that was handed down to them.
- They saw the words in the Bible just like you do today.

**[23] Exodus 34:17 *Thou shalt make thee no molten gods.***

- That's a pretty easy verse to understand. "THOU SHALT NOT MAKE THEE NO MOLTEN GODS."
- "For thou shalt worship no other God!!!" God tells us that over and over in the Bible.
- So, will you do it when it comes to life or death? HE SAID DON'T DO IT.
- Did He say it's okay to do it if someone threatens your life? Sure didn't.
- Will you be willing to die for GOD ALMIGHTY?
- Let me tell you this today. If you choose God, MOST OF THE TIME, He will DELIVER YOU.
- If you stand up for Him the right way, He will take care of you.
- You might have to go through some tribulation, but in the end, He'll raise you up. Don't compromise.
- Don't be afraid of a little persecution or tribulation FOR GOD. He sure wasn't.
- HE DIED SO YOU COULD HAVE LIFE EVERLASTING. He wasn't scared. He didn't run away.

Most of the time people are scared to stand up for God because of something that might happen.

- Hey, do what God says and let the pieces fall where they fall.
- You might think you're going to be killed but God might deliver you.
- In the end, God says people will be cast into prison. People will be killed for HIS NAME.
- It's not everyone. Most people will be delivered out of the persecution and affliction in this life.

**[24] 2 Timothy 3:11 *Persecutions, afflictions, which came unto me at Antioch, at Iconium, at Lystra; what persecutions I endured: but out of them all the Lord delivered me.***

- You MUST be willing to die for God. It's that simple. NEVER COMPROMISE.
- Do you believe YOU HAVE eternal life or not?
- If you do, then what's it matter if they take your life on this Earth?
- Don't be scared of anyone or anything. God will take care of you. He will bless you.
- Think of the rewards in heaven for dying for the CAUSE OF JESUS CHRIST.
- Count yourself as one who God truly loves if you get to stand up for HIM like that.
- LAY DOWN YOUR LIFE for God because HE LAID DOWN HIS LIFE FOR YOU.
- Just remember this: MAN doesn't decide what happens. GOD DECIDES. Understand that today.
- God can make anything happen and stop anything from happening. HE IS GOD.
- Back to Daniel Chapter 3. So they just told the king that they won't worship his god. Verse 19.

**[25] Daniel 3:19 *Then was Nebuchadnezzar full of fury, and the form of his visage was changed against Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego: therefore he spake, and commanded that they should heat the furnace one seven times more than it was wont to be heated.***

- When they rejected his false god, then the king got really angry. He was furious.
- He said, "That's fine. HEAT UP THE FURNACE SEVEN TIMES more than it should be heated."
- So the temperature in that furnace just shows HOW ANGRY he was. His temper was flaming up.
- Watch what happens next in verse 20.

**[26] Daniel 3:20 *And he commanded the most mighty men that were in his army to bind Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, and to cast them into the burning fiery furnace.***

- He sends the MIGHTIEST MEN he has and they bind the three.

- They prepare to CAST them into the FIERY FURNACE.

***[27] Daniel 3:21 Then these men were bound in their coats, their hosen, and their hats, and their other garments, and were cast into the midst of the burning fiery furnace.***

- They were bound in their clothing and cast into the MIDST of the burning fiery furnace.
- So they were quickly taken and thrown into there. They didn't change clothes or anything.

***[28] Daniel 3:22 Therefore because the king's commandment was urgent, and the furnace exceeding hot, the flame of the fire slew those men that took up Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego.***

- The king's command to throw them in there was RUSHED AND URGENT.
- "Hey, throw them in there right now!!!"
- And what happened? THE MIGHTIEST MEN of Babylon were killed by the flames.
- Can you imagine that fiery furnace with flames coming out?
- They couldn't even get close to the fire. It was so hot it killed them immediately.
- And those were the MIGHTIEST MEN. No match for fire.
- So King Nebuchadnezzar lost his mightiest men that day.
- But Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego had clothing on that didn't even catch fire.
- COATS, PANTS, HATS and never caught fire.
- With a fire that hot, they would have immediately burst into flames.
- This shows 100% for sure that this was a miracle from God.
- This wasn't some little fire that they were able to walk around in. Some people explain it that way.
- So you have these so-called BIBLE EXPERTS that try to explain away every miracle in the Bible.

***[29] Daniel 3:23 And these three men, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, fell down bound into the midst of the burning fiery furnace.***

- So they were thrown into this exceeding hot FIERY FURNACE and fell down.
- They were bound up. They didn't somehow escape from the fire. They were IN THE FURNACE.

***[30] Daniel 3:24-25 Then Nebuchadnezzar the king was astonished, and rose up in haste, and spake, and said unto his counsellors, Did not we cast three men bound into the midst of the fire? They answered and said unto the king, True, O king. 25 He answered and said, Lo, I see four men loose, walking in the midst of the fire, and they have no hurt; and the form of the fourth is like the Son of God.***

- The king was astonished at what happened.
- But it wasn't just because they were alive and walking around in the fire.
- They were now loose and walking around with a FOURTH MAN in the fire.
- There wasn't just 3 men any more. There are now FOUR MEN there.
- And none of them are hurt. The fourth man has the form of the SON OF GOD.
- The phrase SON OF GOD is found 46 times in the NEW TESTAMENT.
- This is the ONLY OCCURRENCE of the phrase "SON OF GOD" in the OLD TESTAMENT.

And here's a reason why we use only the KING JAMES BIBLE here in this Church.

- We use it because it is the perfectly inspired WORD OF GOD. There are no errors in the WORD OF GOD.

- And remember, we're in the OLD TESTAMENT. This part of Daniel is written in SYRIACK or ARAMAIC.
- But watch what the others Bibles say.

**[31]****King James Version**

Daniel 3:25

25 He answered and said, Lo, I see four men loose, walking in the midst of the fire, and they have no hurt; and the form of the fourth is like the Son of God.

**New American Standard Bible**

Daniel 3:25

25 He said, "Look! I see four men loosed and walking about in the midst of the fire without harm, and the appearance of the fourth is like a son of the gods!"

**[32]****King James Version**

Daniel 3:25

25 He answered and said, Lo, I see four men loose, walking in the midst of the fire, and they have no hurt; and the form of the fourth is like the Son of God.

**English Standard Version**

Daniel 3:25

25 He answered and said, "But I see four men unbound, walking in the midst of the fire, and they are not hurt; and the appearance of the fourth is like a son of the gods."

Scripture quoted by permission. Quotations designated (NIV) are from THE HOLY**[33]****King James Version**

Daniel 3:25

25 He answered and said, Lo, I see four men loose, walking in the midst of the fire, and they have no hurt; and the form of the fourth is like the Son of God.

**New International Version**

Daniel 3:25

25 He said, "Look! I see four men walking around in the fire, unbound and unharmed, and the fourth looks like a son of the gods."

In all the corrupted Bibles, it changes the words to "LIKE A SON OF THE GODS."

- In the King James Bible, it says "THE FOURTH IS LIKE THE SON OF GOD."
- The New King James actually agrees with the King James Bible in this verse.
- This surprised me because the NEW KING JAMES usually agrees with the other corrupted versions.

Why is this important that the Book of Daniel tells us about the SON OF GOD?

- The modern versions attack the DEITY OF JESUS CHRIST.
- When this happens, you get false religions and false beliefs.
- It's impossible to not go the wrong direction when using the corrupted bible versions.
- They change the word of God. They attack JESUS CHRIST all throughout those Bibles.
- There are hundreds of attacks on Jesus and Daniel 3:25 is just one of those.
- This is important because some false religions like ONENESS PENTACOSTALS believe the SON OF GOD didn't exist in the OLD TESTAMENT.
- They say that only God the Father existed in the Old Testament in that MODE.
- And they might use the King James Bible but they say it's not perfect so they change what they want.
- The correct words are in the KING JAMES BIBLE. It's consistent within its own pages.
- Let's keep going for now but I'll come back to that in just a minute.

**[34] Daniel 3:26** *Then Nebuchadnezzar came near to the mouth of the burning fiery furnace, and spake, and said, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, ye servants of the most high God, come forth, and come hither. Then Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, came forth of the midst of the fire.*

- King Nebuchadnezzar, once again, acknowledges GOD ALMIGHTY.
- In Daniel Chapter 2, the king learns all about the ONE TRUE GOD. He acknowledges HIM then.
- Daniel, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego are made rulers in the kingdom because of GOD.
- Remember, the other bible versions change it to read: "the sons of the gods."
- They do that because they don't think King Nebuchadnezzar believes in the one true GOD.
- But He's already declared HIM in the previous Chapter and he does it again here.
- And Daniel has already told him all about the ONE TRUE GOD.
- So the king tells them to come out of the fire. And they step out of the fire.

**[35] Daniel 3:27** *And the princes, governors, and captains, and the king's counsellors, being gathered together, saw these men, upon whose bodies the fire had no power, nor was an hair of their head singed, neither were their coats changed, nor the smell of fire had passed on them.*

- The fire in that furnace HAD NO POWER over them at all.
- Their coats were in the exact same condition. They didn't even have a smoky smell on them.
- I can't even start a fire in the fireplace or fire pit without getting that smoky smell.
- They went into a HOT FURNACE and didn't even smell like fire.
- And guess what's great about this? EVERYBODY SAW IT.

But I want to make the MOST important point of all today about Daniel Chapter 3.

- The story of the fiery furnace is a PICTURE OF SALVATION.
- If you want to be saved today and you've never trusted on the LORD JESUS CHRIST, listen to this.
- You need to be SAVED from HELL. And hell is much like that fiery furnace BUT much worse.
- You haven't broken King Nebuchadnezzar's commandment BUT you have broken God's.
- I've broken them. You've broken them. We've all broken God's laws. And we do it daily.

**[36] Romans 3:23** *For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God;*

- Since we break God's law, there is a penalty. That penalty is death and hell.
- We all deserve to go to hell. That's what the Bible teaches us throughout.
- Shadrach, Meshach, Abednego went to the FIERY FURNACE which is an imitation of hell.
- And how were they saved? By the SON OF GOD.
- Jesus Christ came down from heaven and saved the flesh of those 3 men that day.
- That's a picture of SALVATION. And what did Jesus Christ do for you?
- He came down from heaven, and He went to hell for you to save you.
- Do you see the comparison? Do you see why it's important to not change the word of God?
- The other corruptions take out the words SON OF GOD from that verse.

You're only saved through the SON OF GOD.

- You can't save yourself in any way.
- No matter what you do, you can't save yourself.

- You can't save yourself from hell by repenting of your sin and being baptized.
- It's not ANY of your works that save you. Those are great things to do but they don't save you.
- JESUS ALONE SAVES YOU. It's HIS SACRIFICE that saves you. TRUST IN HIS WORK, IN HIS SACRIFICE.
- Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego didn't save themselves that day.
- Do you think they did that themselves?
- Do you think there's any person in heaven today that saved themselves?

You might think the story of the FIERY FURNACE is absolutely amazing.

- But, let me tell you what's more amazing than that.
- Every person in heaven right now is a more amazing story than that.
- One day when I'm there in heaven that will be a greater MIRACLE than that fiery furnace.
- Because I know I don't deserve heaven. I've sinned against God all my life.
- But I trust in Jesus Christ ALONE to save me. I know my works will never get me into heaven.
- ANY HUMAN MAKING IT TO HEAVEN is a miracle because we're all sinners.
- But we follow God's plan of salvation that says to BELIEVE ON JESUS and you're saved.
- So we put all of our trust and confidence on HIM as our Savior.
- It's not on US at all. It's all on HIM. It's not MY baptism, it's not MY BIBLE READING, it's not MY REPENTING OF SIN, it's not MY PRAYER, it's not MY CHURCH ATTENDANCE.
- Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego were saved by the SON OF GOD through FAITH.
- They didn't save themselves. They did what God asked and trusted in HIM. That's it.
- They didn't work for it. They were thrown in the fire. Jesus saved them. That's it. He did it all.

In order to save you, Jesus had to take ALL YOUR SIN to hell with His SOUL.

- That means all your sins: past, present, and future were already paid for BY JESUS.
- He paid for them already. When a soul has sin, it goes to hell.
- The soul of Jesus took all your sins and HIS SOUL WENT TO HELL FOR YOU.
- Some people tell me that the soul of Jesus didn't go to hell.
- And that's pretty much EVERY CHURCH around here that tells me that. But I trust the Bible.
- The soul of Jesus went to hell. HE TOOK YOUR SINS TO HELL.
- The body of Jesus went to the grave. The Spirit of Jesus went to the Father. The Soul of Jesus went to hell.

***[37] Acts 2:31 He seeing this before spake of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption.***

- That verse right there says that the soul of Jesus was not left in hell.
- So did the soul of Jesus go to hell? Sure it did because that's what the Bible says.

***[38] Psalm 16:10 For thou wilt not leave my soul in hell; neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.***

- THE HOLY ONE in that verse is obviously JESUS CHRIST.
- The Book of Acts quotes King David in the Book of Psalms when he prophesies about Jesus Christ.

***[39] Matthew 12:40 For as Jonas was three days and three nights in the whale's belly; so shall the Son of man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.***



- Hell is in the HEART of the Earth. That's way down there my friend. That's where the soul of Jesus went.
- The body being buried in a tomb is not the heart of the earth.
- That verse right there is talking about the SOUL OF JESUS going to hell and burning for you.
- Understand today what HE DID FOR YOU. He took all of your sin to hell.
- And He took the worst of what you've done onto HIS PERFECT SOUL.
- Think of taking the sickest sins of this world onto YOUR soul. That would be painful.
- Think of taking a murderers sins onto yourself. That's painful, and you're not even perfect.
- Jesus is perfect, and He took all of those sick and nasty sins of the entire world. That's painful.
- His soul was a burnt offering for all of our sin. God the Father didn't leave the soul of Jesus in hell.
- That's the good news today. HE RAISED JESUS FROM THE DEAD three days later. He is victorious today.
- He is sitting on the right hand of God the Father today VICTORIOUS!!!

***[40] Colossians 3:1 If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God.***

- And do you want to know the sad part?
- There's people out there that HE paid for all their sins, and they won't accept what He did for them.
- Instead of being like that, accept it RIGHT NOW if you haven't before.
- And then what do you do? SEEK THOSE THINGS WHICH ARE ABOVE!!!
- Be baptized once you're saved. Read the Bible. OBEY GOD. Repent of your sin. Stay in fellowship with God. Go Soul Winning with us. Win souls to Christ. Seek the things which are above.
- So look, don't use a corrupted version.
- Daniel 3:25 is enough for me to see the attack on Jesus Christ and the GOSPEL that saves people.
- Get rid of that trash today and use the King James Bible. Understand it is the perfect word of God.
- Let's go back to Daniel Chapter 3 verse 28.

***[41] Daniel 3:28 Then Nebuchadnezzar spake, and said, Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, who hath sent his angel, and delivered his servants that trusted in him, and have changed the king's word, and yielded their bodies, that they might not serve nor worship any god, except their own God.***

- And then we see that King Nebuchadnezzar blesses and praises the ONE TRUE GOD.
- He saw a miracle and believed what he saw.
- He says: "God has sent his angel and delivered HIS SERVANTS that TRUSTED IN HIM."
- Notice the part that says "HE DELIVERED HIS SERVANTS THAT TRUSTED IN HIM."
- That's how you're saved today. Put your trust in Him and you're saved. Past tense. Done. Finished.
- The king says you changed my word and gave up your bodies for GOD.
- So look, give up your fleshly body today and serve God.
- For example, give up all your worldly desires and SEEK GOD ABOVE.
- The things of this world will pass away but HEAVEN will NEVER pass away.
- That's what you want to go after. You might not see it now, but trust what God says.
- When you seek after Him and obey Him, you're being GIFTED things of ETERNAL SIGNIFICANCE.
- These are things that will last eternally.
- It's not money that will burn up. It's not a nice new home that rots away.
- It's not a new car that eventually turns into a bucket of rust.
- None of that stuff matters. What matter is YOUR SOUL and where you're going when you die.
- Don't be afraid to give up your life here for GOD. Do it. Best thing you'll ever do.

- Let's finish this Chapter up with verse 29 and 30.

***[42] Daniel 3:29 Therefore I make a decree, That every people, nation, and language, which speak any thing amiss against the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, shall be cut in pieces, and their houses shall be made a dunghill: because there is no other God that can deliver after this sort.***

- Do you see what happens right there?
- The King sends out an ORDER saying that NO ONE should speak against GOD ALMIGHTY.
- WOW!!! Understand today how amazing that is.
- And if they did, they shall be CUT IN PIECES and all their houses shall be made into a DUNG HILL.
- And when the King sent out a decree, it would happen. The threats were taken seriously.
- He realized that GOD ALMIGHTY IS THERE. He's real my friends. That's what the king is saying right there.
- Could you imagine if our President put out a law like that for GOD ALMIGHTY?
- Wow, I would love it. The Bible could be put back in the world today.
- The word of God would spread faster than ever.
- And that's what the King of Babylon ORDERED right there that day because of that miracle.
- People were able to HEAR about the one true God all because Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego stood up for God. People were saved from hell because they stood up for God.
- And I guarantee when you stand up for God that people will get saved too.
- Someone will be watching and someone will be listening. Stand up for God today and the rest of your life.

***[43] Daniel 3:30 Then the king promoted Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, in the province of Babylon.***

- So, instead of dying that day GOD SAVED those 3 men because they trusted in Him.
- You might not have to die or you might not be thrown into a fiery furnace because you stand up for God.
- But guess what? YOU NEED TO BE WILLING TO DIE for God.
- And then you will stand up for Him. If you're not willing to die for Him, you won't stand up for Him.
- If you're not willing to lose everything you have for HIM, you won't stand up for Him.
- Notice what I said. Losing your life for Him is losing everything you have here on this Earth.
- If you were going to be put to death, you would lose everything you have right now.
- That's husband, wife, children, family, friends, pets, job, home, cars, bank account, everything.
- If you aren't willing to DIE, then you won't stand up for God.
- Let's change our mindsets today and understand that God will take care of us.
- WE MUST BE WILLING TO GIVE OUR LIFE FOR HIM. He was willing to die for us first.
- Now it's our turn to stand up for Him. No compromise. Let's do what He says.

Let's pray.



## **SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 4**

[2] The title of the sermon today is “DANIEL CHAPTER 4.”

- Daniel has 12 total chapters. Not 11 chapters. It has 12.
- Today, we’re going to go over Daniel Chapter 4 verse by verse.
- Chapters 1 through 4 deal with the reign of King Nebuchadnezzar.
- So, we’re on the last chapter that deals with Nebuchadnezzar’s reign over Babylon.

Quick overview of the Bible so you can see where we are in the Book of Daniel:

- Adam, Eve, Cain, and Abel. Cain kills Abel. Adam and Eve have Seth.
- Leading up to the flood the inhabitants of the earth have become wicked.
- Flood happens. Noah and his family is saved.
- Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The sons of Jacob or Israel are 12. You have the 12 tribes of Israel.
- These are the people God has chosen to bring and spread the word of God to ALL PEOPLE.
- Joseph, one of Jacob’s 12 sons, goes to Egypt. He is sold into Egypt.
- He becomes a great ruler under Pharaoh in Egypt.
- Jacob and all his family moves closer to Joseph in the land of Egypt.

Moses is born and raised up to lead the children of Israel out of Egypt.

- They leave Egypt. They go into the wilderness. They are led into the promised land.
- Joshua leads them into the promised land over the river.
- They fight for their land and take some of the land but not all.
- Then come the Judges. The children of Israel didn’t destroy the evil men out of the land.
- They mixed in and didn’t follow God. God brought other nations to rule over them.
- They called out to God for help. God raised up Judges or leaders to help them.
- Then they had peace. Did the same thing over and over again. Fell away from God every time.

Then we see the people wanting a King to rule over them. They didn’t like God’s way.

- King Saul is raised up. He doesn’t do what he’s supposed to do.
- King David is the next King over the children of Israel. He expands the Kingdom.
- King Solomon is next. He ends up falling away from God and worshipping other gods.
- God splits the children of Israel into 2 kingdoms. ISRAEL in the North and JUDAH in the South.
- You now have 2 sets of Kings for each KINGDOM.
- The kings in the Northern Kingdom of Judah do evil. ALL OF THEM. The Assyrians conquer Israel.

Judah has some kings that are good and some that are bad. So the kingdom of Judah lasts longer.

- But they’re conquered by Babylon and some JEWS from JUDAH are carried away into captivity.
- King Nebuchadnezzar is the KING THAT CONQUERS JUDAH.
- God gives Judah into his hand as a punishment to JUDAH for not following HIM.
- Daniel is a young man when all of that happens. He’s taken into captivity in Babylon.
- But Daniel stays true to God his entire life. His story is in the Book of Daniel.
- So now, let’s start there in Daniel Chapter 4 and hear the last chapter about King Nebuchadnezzar’s reign.

**[3] Daniel 4:1 Nebuchadnezzar the king, unto all people, nations, and languages, that dwell in all the earth; Peace be multiplied unto you.**

- In this introduction, we see that KING NEBUCHADNEZZAR is writing to who?
- It says: "UNTO ALL PEOPLE, ALL NATIONS, ALL LANGUAGES."
- The king is writing to ALL people who dwell in the earth.
- This means HIS WORDS were being interpreted into all these other tongues or languages.
- And we are reading it in ENGLISH today. His words were preserved for us.
- Why? So we can learn from HIS STORY today. We can see what happened to him and why.

"Peace be multiplied unto you" is seen right there at the end of verse 1.

- This sounds like the New Testament letters from Peter and Paul.

**[4] 2 Peter 1:2 Grace and peace be multiplied unto you through the knowledge of God, and of Jesus our Lord,**

- We're going to see that verses 1 through 3 in Daniel Chapter 4 are an introduction.
- KING NEBUCHADNEZZAR is telling us HIS STORY in this Chapter. And it's very important to understand.
- See if you think King Nebuchadnezzar is saved as we read through this Chapter.
- He's telling us this story from his past and what he was like in his past.

**[5] Daniel 4:2 I thought it good to shew the signs and wonders that the high God hath wrought toward me.**

- Why is King Nebuchadnezzar writing to us today? The purpose of his letter is right there.
- He says, "I thought it good to SHOW THE SIGNS AND WONDERS that God hath wrought or performed toward me."
- God showed King Nebuchadnezzar great signs and wonders for a reason.
- The things that God does ALWAYS is for a profit in this world. He does things for a reason.
- The king didn't seek after these signs and wonders. GOD CHOSE TO SHOW THEM TO HIM.

Don't seek after SIGNS from God. We all want a sign from God. Don't seek after signs.

- Let me show you why today.

**[6] Matthew 12:39-40 But he answered and said unto them, An evil and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign; and there shall no sign be given to it, but the sign of the prophet Jonas: 40 For as Jonas was three days and three nights in the whale's belly; so shall the Son of man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.**

- Jesus HIMSELF says the only sign you NEED is the sign of JESUS dying on the cross.
- His soul went to hell. Jesus went to hell in the heart of the earth for you. He died for your sins.
- That's the only sign you need to know. Don't seek after signs from God.

**[7] Matthew 24:24 For there shall arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall shew great signs and wonders; insomuch that, if it were possible, they shall deceive the very elect.**

- Jesus warns us that in the times we're living today that FALSE SAVIORS and FALSE PREACHERS will show GREAT SIGNS AND WONDERS.

- Don't be deceived by those. If you get into this habit of seeking after signs, you can fall for false teaching.
- Speaking in BABBLE is not a sign from God that you're SAVED.

You don't need a SIGN FROM GOD to know that you're saved.

- Why seek after a sign like speaking in BABBLE to know that you're saved?
- The Bible tells you that you're saved so do you trust GOD'S WORD?
- Or, do you trust what some false religion says? If you trust the religion over God, you're not saved.
- Why? Because you're putting your trust in something else other than GOD.

***[8] 1 John 5:13 These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God.***

- God said it. Believe it. It's over and done. You don't need anything else. You don't need a sign.
- Don't seek after a sign and then maybe God might show you AMAZING THINGS.
- But usually He's showing signs and wonders to people who don't believe. And they still don't believe.
- King Nebuchadnezzar is one example of this.
- He shows him signs and wonders, and he continues to do what he wants.
- Don't fall for SIGNS and WONDERS in this day and age.
- JESUS warns us about this in Matthew 24, which should ring a bell. It's about the end of the world.
- We use Matthew Chapter 24 constantly when studying the Book of Revelation.

***[9] Daniel 4:3 How great are his signs! and how mighty are his wonders! his kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and his dominion is from generation to generation.***

- So look there. It appears that when King Nebuchadnezzar is telling his story that HE'S SAVED.
- We don't know for sure, but he tells us that GOD'S KINGDOM is an EVERLASTING KINGDOM.
- His dominion is from generation to generation.
- So these first 3 verses are an introduction AFTER all of the rest of the chapter happened.
- Now, let's get into King Nebuchadnezzar's story of what happened to him in the past.
- You're going to see God teach this great king a lesson. And it appears that the king learned his lesson.

***[10] Daniel 4:4-5 I Nebuchadnezzar was at rest in mine house, and flourishing in my palace: 5 I saw a dream which made me afraid, and the thoughts upon my bed and the visions of my head troubled me.***

- So he's resting in his house, doing very well in his palace. All is well and going great.
- This happens in our lives when we're not doing right and when we don't know God.
- Life can be much easier when you just go along with the world and don't cause any problems.
- "Oh yeah, drugs are fine. Public schools are doing their best. It's okay to feel like you're a woman when you're man. Yes, abortion is the woman's right. We don't want to make the woman mad. The baby can't say anything back to us. Let's just make everyone happy and agree with everything."

"Well, the churches around here are doing good. They're trying to help people by teaching a false god."

- "it's okay. It's not really that bad." So yeah, let's just go along with everything so life is easy and good.
- See? That makes life much easier. Everyone will like you. Everyone will say good things about you.
- But look, I don't care what everyone else thinks about me and you shouldn't either.
- What you should care about is whether or not God likes you.

Are you for GOD or against GOD?

- You can't be friends with the world and with God.
- And you might be thinking: "Well, yes I can. I can be friends with God and the world."
- And I say, "No you can't!!!" How do I know that? Because the Bible tells me so.

***[11] James 4:4 Ye adulterers and adulteresses, know ye not that the friendship of the world is enmity with God? whosoever therefore will be a friend of the world is the enemy of God.***

- So, today, do you want to be an enemy of the world or an enemy of God?
- Surely all that are here right now are pretty smart people. You're here listening.
- Surely you'll choose to be friends with God and not the world.
- All of these wicked things in the world today ARE NOT OKAY. God isn't happy with wickedness.
- Drugs are evil. Alcohol is evil. Fornication is evil.
- Public schools without GOD are evil. Homosexuality is evil. Transgenderism is evil.
- False preaching is evil. False religions are evil. False gods are evil. SAY SOMETHING. Stand up for God.

So, King Nebuchadnezzar is doing well in his palace, and then he has a dream.

- This dream scares him. The dream troubles him.
- And look, he's had dreams like this before. Daniel interpreted his dream in Daniel Chapter 2.
- King Nebuchadnezzar tried to BURN Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego in the fiery furnace in Chapter 3.
- He saw the SON OF GOD walking around in the fiery furnace.
- What's it going to take for King Nebuchadnezzar to PUT ALL HIS TRUST in GOD ALMIGHTY?
- He knows God is there, he believes God is there, but that doesn't mean he's saved. Watch what happens.

***[12] Daniel 4:6-7 Therefore made I a decree to bring in all the wise men of Babylon before me, that they might make known unto me the interpretation of the dream. 7 Then came in the magicians, the astrologers, the Chaldeans, and the soothsayers: and I told the dream before them; but they did not make known unto me the interpretation thereof.***

- He has this dream that troubles him. He wants to know what it means.
- What's he do? Instead of calling Daniel, he looks to all the false trash like the magicians and astrologers.
- That's like going to a Tarot card reader instead of going to God. Don't seek after those evil people.
- Yeah, they might tell you something that comes true. There's evil working in this world.
- They will show signs and wonders. Remember what we just read from Jesus in Matthew 24?
- God is control of all things. Why go to someone else? Do you think God wants you going to some fortune teller or witch or Tarot card reader or anything like that? Let's see what the Bible says.

***[13] Deuteronomy 18:10-12 There shall not be found among you any one that maketh his son or his daughter to pass through the fire, or that useth divination, or an observer of times, or an enchanter, or a witch, 11 Or a charmer, or a consulter with familiar spirits, or a wizard, or a necromancer. 12 For all that do these things are an abomination unto the LORD: and because of these abominations the LORD thy God doth drive them out from before thee.***

***[14] Exodus 22:18 Thou shalt not suffer a witch to live.***

- Why is that? Because witchcraft is evil. It's sick. It's greatly HATED by God Almighty.
- God has proven to King Nebuchadnezzar that HE IS GOD and yet he still seeks these other evil people.
- He should have went straight to God through the prophet Daniel. He's proven himself over and over.
- NONE of those magicians or soothsayers could interpret the dream.

***[15] Daniel 4:8-9 But at the last Daniel came in before me, whose name was Belteshazzar, according to the name of my god, and in whom is the spirit of the holy gods: and before him I told the dream, saying, 9 O Belteshazzar, master of the magicians, because I know that the spirit of the holy gods is in thee, and no secret troubleth thee, tell me the visions of my dream that I have seen, and the interpretation thereof.***

- At this time, King Nebuchadnezzar is obviously NOT SAVED. He seeks Daniel AFTER he first seeks the evil.
- King Nebuchadnezzar says right there: "Belteshazzar, according to the NAME OF MY GOD."
- He had changed Daniel's name to BELTESHAZZAR. What's that name start with? "BEL" or "BAAL."

***[16] Numbers 22:41 And it came to pass on the morrow, that Balak took Balaam, and brought him up into the high places of Baal, that thence he might see the utmost part of the people.***

***[17] Judges 2:12-14 And they forsook the LORD God of their fathers, which brought them out of the land of Egypt, and followed other gods, of the gods of the people that were round about them, and bowed themselves unto them, and provoked the LORD to anger. 13 And they forsook the LORD, and served Baal and Ashtaroath. 14 And the anger of the LORD was hot against Israel, and he delivered them into the hands of spoilers that spoiled them, and he sold them into the hands of their enemies round about, so that they could not any longer stand before their enemies.***

- Obviously, Nebuchadnezzar is doing the same thing. He worships a false god.
- In verse 8 of Daniel Chapter 4, we see him say that Daniel has the spirit of the holy gods. PLURAL.
- He calls Daniel a "MASTER OF THE MAGICIANS." But Daniel isn't a magician.
- People might call you things in this world, but what really matters is what God calls you.
- The king knows that Daniel will tell him everything he needs to know. Why not go there first?

***[18] Daniel 4:10-12 Thus were the visions of mine head in my bed; I saw, and behold a tree in the midst of the earth, and the height thereof was great. 11 The tree grew, and was strong, and the height thereof reached unto heaven, and the sight thereof to the end of all the earth: 12 The leaves thereof were fair, and the fruit thereof much, and in it was meat for all: the beasts of the field had shadow under it, and the fowls of the heaven dwelt in the boughs thereof, and all flesh was fed of it.***

- King Nebuchadnezzar is still speaking here. He's telling Daniel what he saw.
- So keep in mind, Daniel comes into see the king. He is telling Daniel his dream.

***[19] Daniel 4:13 I saw in the visions of my head upon my bed, and, behold, a watcher and an holy one came down from heaven;***

- Someone that comes down from heaven is called a watcher or a holy one.
- This could be an angel, either a man or a living creature. It's someone from heaven who watches.
- God is watching over us. The angels are ministering spirits to us who watch over us.
- Watch what this WATCHER AND HOLY ONE says in the next verse in HIS DREAM.

**[20] Daniel 4:14** *He cried aloud, and said thus, Hew down the tree, and cut off his branches, shake off his leaves, and scatter his fruit: let the beasts get away from under it, and the fowls from his branches:*

- Notice that he cries out and says, "HEW DOWN THE TREE AND CUT OFF HIS BRANCHES."
- Shake of HIS leaves. Scatter HIS fruit. HIS BRANCHES. Sounds like the tree refers to a HIM.

**[21] Daniel 4:15** *Nevertheless leave the stump of his roots in the earth, even with a band of iron and brass, in the tender grass of the field; and let it be wet with the dew of heaven, and let his portion be with the beasts in the grass of the earth:*

- So God isn't going to completely destroy King Nebuchadnezzar and his kingdom.
- Leaving the roots means he's going to have another chance.
- He isn't going to get rejected by God, but God will punish him to show him HE IS GOD.

**[22] Job 14:7-9** *For there is hope of a tree, if it be cut down, that it will sprout again, and that the tender branch thereof will not cease. 8 Though the root thereof wax old in the earth, and the stock thereof die in the ground; 9 Yet through the scent of water it will bud, and bring forth boughs like a plant.*

- God isn't FULLY REJECTING the king here.
- He's going to show him something and give him another chance.
- God is going to send him to live with the beasts day and night.

**[23] Daniel 4:16** *Let his heart be changed from man's, and let a beast's heart be given unto him; and let seven times pass over him.*

- This watcher is still speaking here. The king's heart is going to be changed from man to animal.
- And then it tells us it's going to be like that for 7 times.
- God hardens the heart of people. He did it to Pharaoh.

**[24] Isaiah 6:10-12** *Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes; lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and convert, and be healed. 11 Then said I, Lord, how long? And he answered, Until the cities be wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man, and the land be utterly desolate, 12 And the LORD have removed men far away, and there be a great forsaking in the midst of the land.*

- God hardens the hearts of people there in ISAIAH. Why? Because they wouldn't have any part in HIM.
- God showed King Nebuchadnezzar the truth over and over again, and he still had a false god.
- God brings people to the truth, and then they REJECT HIM over and over again.
- Those people should be careful, though, because one day GOD just might REJECT THEM.

**[25] Hebrews 6:4-6** *For it is impossible for those who were once enlightened, and have tasted of the heavenly gift, and were made partakers of the Holy Ghost, 5 And have tasted the good word of God, and the powers of the world to come, 6 If they shall fall away, to renew them again unto repentance; seeing they crucify to themselves the Son of God afresh, and put him to an open shame.*



- The Scripture right there is talking about people who now understand the truth about God.
- You've given them the Gospel, they understand the Gospel, a light bulb goes off in their head.
- They understand. The Holy Spirit has brought them to this place of understanding.
- Now they have a choice to accept the truth or not. They've tasted the word of God.
- They understand how to be saved. But they reject it. They say, "Well, I'll have to think about this."

And then they walk back in their home, watch TV, and continue on with their easy life of making themselves happy.

- Verse 6 says that if they fall away now it will be IMPOSSIBLE to renew them AGAIN to repentance.
- They were almost there. They almost CHANGED THEIR MIND and believed on the Lord Jesus Christ.
- Every time they do this they REJECT JESUS CHRIST who died for them.
- They crucify Jesus Christ once again and put HIM to an open shame. He gets tired of being rejected.
- Do it one too many times, and it could be too late. GOD DOES REJECT people.
- When He does this, their part is taken out of the book of life. It doesn't come back. They can't be saved.
- And King Nebuchadnezzar was playing it close but God was giving him another shot.

***[26] Hebrews 6:7-8 For the earth which drinketh in the rain that cometh oft upon it, and bringeth forth herbs meet for them by whom it is dressed, receiveth blessing from God: 8 But that which beareth thorns and briers is rejected, and is nigh unto cursing; whose end is to be burned.***

- Do you see the word REJECTED there? REJECTED. Whose end is to be burned.

***[27] Jeremiah 6:19 Hear, O earth: behold, I will bring evil upon this people, even the fruit of their thoughts, because they have not hearkened unto my words, nor to my law, but rejected it.***

- Reject what God says, and what's He say He'll do within the Bible? He'll reject you.
- He will bring EVIL upon you.

***[28] Jeremiah 6:30 Reprobate silver shall men call them, because the LORD hath rejected them.***

- Does God accept everyone no matter what like all the churches around here say?
- Sure doesn't look like it to me. Old Testament and New Testament agree.
- He's not different in the New Testament.

***[29] Hosea 4:6 My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge: because thou hast rejected knowledge, I will also reject thee, that thou shalt be no priest to me: seeing thou hast forgotten the law of thy God, I will also forget thy children.***

- Reject God, and He'll reject you and your children. "Well, that's not fair."
- Well, maybe you should think about NOT rejecting God.

***[30] Hebrews 12:17 For ye know how that afterward, when he would have inherited the blessing, he was rejected: for he found no place of repentance, though he sought it carefully with tears.***

- That verse right there is talking about Esau. He pushed it too far. He tried to go back to God but couldn't.
- It says right there that HE WAS REJECTED even though he sought it carefully with tears.

- Everyone tries to change those words. They try to change the nature of God.
- They create a new god that fits them better.
- So God rejects people. He rejected Esau. It all makes sense.

**[31] Malachi 1:2-3** *I have loved you, saith the LORD. Yet ye say, Wherein hast thou loved us? Was not Esau Jacob's brother? saith the LORD: yet I loved Jacob, 3 And I hated Esau, and laid his mountains and his heritage waste for the dragons of the wilderness.*

**[32] Romans 9:13** *As it is written, Jacob have I loved, but Esau have I hated.*

- So again, when you speak to people who aren't saved, understand they may be rejected.
- And understand if they aren't, you being there might just be their last chance.
- Or maybe their second to last chance or third to last chance.
- They can be rejected or reprobate.

**[33] Romans 1:28** *And even as they did not like to retain God in their knowledge, God gave them over to a reprobate mind, to do those things which are not convenient;*

- God gives up on people. It's in the Bible over and over again. He rejects people who reject Him.
- He doesn't give people unlimited chances to accept HIM.
- God gives up on people for good when He throws them into hell for eternity.
- And there is no excuse the Bible says. He gives everyone the opportunity to accept HIM.
- So, we see King Nebuchadnezzar getting another chance in Daniel Chapter 4.

**[34] Daniel 4:16** *Let his heart be changed from man's, and let a beast's heart be given unto him; and let seven times pass over him.*

- God is temporarily changing the heart of Nebuchadnezzar into the heart of a beast.
- How long is he going to stay like that? Let's see. It says: "LET SEVEN TIMES PASS OVER HIM."

**[35] Daniel 7:25** *And he shall speak great words against the most High, and shall wear out the saints of the most High, and think to change times and laws: and they shall be given into his hand until a time and times and the dividing of time.*

- Do you see time, times, and the dividing of time? TIME = 1 year. TIMES = 2 years. That's 3 years so far.
- Then you see the dividing of time. 1/2 time = 1/2 year. Total is 3.5 years in Daniel 7:25.
- But what's Daniel 7:25 talking about and how do we know it's in years?

**[36] Revelation 11:2** *But the court which is without the temple leave out, and measure it not; for it is given unto the Gentiles: and the holy city shall they tread under foot forty and two months.*

- 42 months is 3.5 years or a time, times, and the dividing of time.
- King Nebuchadnezzar is in the wilderness as a BEAST for 7 years.
- It's a picture of the Anti-Christ who is the BEAST in the Book of Revelation.
- And the Anti-Christ will be there in the end for 7 years. That's called Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week.
- King Nebuchadnezzar is the King of Babylon. In Revelation, we see Babylon.



- So again, King Nebuchadnezzar is turned into a beast for 7 years.

**[37] Daniel 4:17** *This matter is by the decree of the watchers, and the demand by the word of the holy ones: to the intent that the living may know that the most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will, and setteth up over it the basest of men.*

- Why is this going to be done to King Nebuchadnezzar?
- It says it right there in verse 17: "That the living may know that the MOST HIGH ruleth in the kingdom of men."
- God doesn't just rule in heaven. He rules HERE on earth too. He gives the kingdom of men to whoever He wants. God will give it to the lowest of men or the BASEST of men.
- In other words, God can put horrible rulers over us if we want to go up against Him.
- He does it all throughout the Bible. God repays good with good and evil with evil.

**[38] Deuteronomy 7:9-10** *Know therefore that the LORD thy God, he is God, the faithful God, which keepeth covenant and mercy with them that love him and keep his commandments to a thousand generations; 10 And repayeth them that hate him to their face, to destroy them: he will not be slack to him that hateth him, he will repay him to his face.*

- And He's going to show King Nebuchadnezzar he was only ruling because God put him there to rule.
- He didn't do it all on his own. God gave it to him. God can take it away.

**[39] Job 9:12** *Behold, he taketh away, who can hinder him? who will say unto him, What doest thou?*

- If God decides to take away, what are you going to do? Are you going to question God Almighty?
- No, of course not. HE'S GOD. And King Nebuchadnezzar is going to have to wake up and understand.

**[40] Daniel 4:18** *This dream I king Nebuchadnezzar have seen. Now thou, O Belteshazzar, declare the interpretation thereof, forasmuch as all the wise men of my kingdom are not able to make known unto me the interpretation: but thou art able; for the spirit of the holy gods is in thee.*

- Again, the king makes reference to the spirit of the holy gods. He's talking about multiple gods which is false.
- At this point in his story, he doesn't realize that there's ONLY ONE GOD.
- He thinks it's okay to have multiple gods or to believe in all different types of gods.
- That's what our world today says. Respect all religions and beliefs. That's King Nebuchadnezzar.
- No!!! I won't respect all religions. I will ONLY respect the ONE TRUE GOD in this BIBLE.
- At the end of verse 18, the king is finished talking to Daniel.
- Now he wants the interpretation of the dream.

**[41] Daniel 4:19** *Then Daniel, whose name was Belteshazzar, was astonished for one hour, and his thoughts troubled him. The king spake, and said, Belteshazzar, let not the dream, or the interpretation thereof, trouble thee. Belteshazzar answered and said, My lord, the dream be to them that hate thee, and the interpretation thereof to thine enemies.*

- Daniel was astonished for ONE HOUR. The king saw that he was troubled.

- He tells Daniel to not worry. Just tell me the interpretation.
- You can see that Daniel still works for the king and gives him respect.
- He may have a false god, but God set him over the kingdom for a reason.
- He says, "My lord I would rather this dream be to those who hate thee."
- In other words, it's not good. The interpretation of the dream starts there in verse 20.

**[42] Daniel 4:20-21** *The tree that thou sawest, which grew, and was strong, whose height reached unto the heaven, and the sight thereof to all the earth; 21 Whose leaves were fair, and the fruit thereof much, and in it was meat for all; under which the beasts of the field dwelt, and upon whose branches the fowls of the heaven had their habitation:*

- So Daniel repeats the dream that the king had.

**[43] Daniel 4:22** *It is thou, O king, that art grown and become strong: for thy greatness is grown, and reacheth unto heaven, and thy dominion to the end of the earth.*

- So this is where we learn that the TREE in the dream is KING NEBUCHADNEZZAR.
- He's grown strong. He is a great king with a great kingdom over all the earth.

**[44] Daniel 4:23-24** *And whereas the king saw a watcher and an holy one coming down from heaven, and saying, Hew the tree down, and destroy it; yet leave the stump of the roots thereof in the earth, even with a band of iron and brass, in the tender grass of the field; and let it be wet with the dew of heaven, and let his portion be with the beasts of the field, till seven times pass over him; 24 This is the interpretation, O king, and this is the decree of the most High, which is come upon my lord the king:*

- We see that God isn't going to destroy the king completely. He's doing it temporarily.
- He's going to go out and live with the beasts of the field for 7 years.
- Let's get more details of what's going to happen to the king.

**[45] Daniel 4:25** *That they shall drive thee from men, and thy dwelling shall be with the beasts of the field, and they shall make thee to eat grass as oxen, and they shall wet thee with the dew of heaven, and seven times shall pass over thee, till thou know that the most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will.*

- He's going to live out with the beasts of the field. He's going to eat grass.
- This will happen UNTIL he understand that GOD RULES THE KINGDOM OF MEN.
- And GOD gives the KINGDOM OF MEN to whoever He wants.
- He's teaching the king a lesson. There is ONLY ONE TRUE GOD.
- Daniel has been around the king. You don't think Daniel preached the Gospel to the king?
- Of course he did. Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego were also rulers for the king along with Daniel.
- The king had heard plenty about the ONE TRUE GOD, and he rejected it over and over again.
- He would still choose to call in the magicians and sorcerers FIRST instead of Daniel.

**[46] Daniel 4:26** *And whereas they commanded to leave the stump of the tree roots; thy kingdom shall be sure unto thee, after that thou shalt have known that the heavens do rule.*

- Even though the king will go out into the wilderness for 7 years, GOD won't take the kingdom away.
- After the 7 years, the king will KNOW that the GOD IN HEAVEN rules over all.

**[47] Daniel 4:27** *Wherefore, O king, let my counsel be acceptable unto thee, and break off thy sins by righteousness, and thine iniquities by shewing mercy to the poor; if it may be a lengthening of thy tranquillity.*

- Daniel ends by saying, "Please king let my counsel be acceptable to you."
- And what's his counsel? That's Daniels' advice and instruction to the King. What is it?
- He tells the king to STOP YOUR SINS. Stop thinking that you're so righteous.
- Show mercy to the poor. Stop being prideful and arrogant. Why?
- "If it may be a lengthening of thy tranquillity." OR LENGTHEN YOUR PEACE AND PROSPERITY.
- If not, this dream is going to happen. Daniel preached against sin!!! This dream is a warning to the king.
- And it's a warning to us today. That's why it's here in this BIBLE.
- Did the king listen to Daniel? Did this dream really bother the king? Does this bother you today?
- Nah, doesn't bother you? It didn't really bother the king either. THIS IS THE WORD OF GOD.
- We better listen. Why? Watch what happens.

**[48] Daniel 4:28** *All this came upon the king Nebuchadnezzar.*

- The king must have not listened BECAUSE it all happened just like Daniel said.

**[49] Daniel 4:29-30** *At the end of twelve months he walked in the palace of the kingdom of Babylon. 30 The king spake, and said, Is not this great Babylon, that I have built for the house of the kingdom by the might of my power, and for the honour of my majesty?*

- Notice he says, "THIS GREAT BABYLON THAT I HAVE BUILT."
- He says, "I DID THIS WITH MY MIGHT AND MY POWER."
- He's very prideful, and Daniel warned him about this sin.

**[50] Psalm 10:4** *The wicked, through the pride of his countenance, will not seek after God: God is not in all his thoughts.*

- Why do the wicked not seek after God? THE PRIDE OF HIMSELF. "I'm so great. I don't need God."
- That's what King Nebuchadnezzar was doing exactly.

**[51] Proverbs 8:13** *The fear of the LORD is to hate evil: pride, and arrogancy, and the evil way, and the froward mouth, do I hate.*

- PRIDE and arrogancy is evil. We definitely better not be prideful and arrogant in ANY WAY.
- Why? Because God hates it and will bring you down. He will humble you.
- That's what He's about to do to King Nebuchadnezzar.

**[52] Proverbs 16:18** *Pride goeth before destruction, and an haughty spirit before a fall.*

- PRIDE always occurs before destruction. If you feel prideful, get rid of it quickly.
- Don't have PRIDE in things. "Hey, I'm proud of you." We need to stop saying that. Pride isn't a good thing.

**[53] 1 Timothy 3:6** *Not a novice, lest being lifted up with pride he fall into the condemnation of the devil.*

- This is talking about the office of a bishop or church leader.
- They can't be a novice. A novice will be lifted up with PRIDE.
- When that happens, he will fall into the condemnation of the devil.
- THEN COMES DESTRUCTION IN THIS LIFE. You don't want that.

**[54] 1 John 2:16** *For all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world.*

- Let's get rid of the pride and understand it's GOD ALONE who has the power.
- God gets all the glory. Let's get rid of the pride.
- Let's humble ourselves before God.

**[55] James 4:6** *But he giveth more grace. Wherefore he saith, God resisteth the proud, but giveth grace unto the humble.*

- Do you know who wasn't lifted up with pride EVEN THOUGH He is God?

**[56] Philippians 2:6-8** *Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God: 7 But made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men: 8 And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross.*

- GOD IS NOT PRIDEFUL. He hates pride and arrogance.
- If Jesus were prideful, he wouldn't have come to the cross and died for you.

**[57] James 4:10** *Humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord, and he shall lift you up.*

- He wants us to be humble. Don't be all high and mighty. THEN HE SHALL LIFT YOU UP.
- So, King Nebuchadnezzar is about to be humbled.

**[58] Daniel 4:31** *While the word was in the king's mouth, there fell a voice from heaven, saying, O king Nebuchadnezzar, to thee it is spoken; The kingdom is departed from thee.*

- While the King was speaking on how great he was, a voice comes from heaven.
- "THE KINGDOM IS DEPARTED FROM THEE." I love how God does things. His ways are perfect.
- This voice from heaven keeps going in verse 32.

**[59] Daniel 4:32** *And they shall drive thee from men, and thy dwelling shall be with the beasts of the field: they shall make thee to eat grass as oxen, and seven times shall pass over thee, until thou know that the most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will.*

- The voice from heaven repeats what we already know is going to happen.
- And the voice tells us again that it will be done so the King knows GOD IS RULING OVER HIM.

**[60] Daniel 4:33** *The same hour was the thing fulfilled upon Nebuchadnezzar: and he was driven from men, and did eat grass as oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of heaven, till his hairs were grown like eagles' feathers, and his nails like birds' claws.*

- So this happened immediately within the same hour that it was spoken from heaven.
- He became like an animal, acted like an animal, and lived with the animals.
- He lived out with the animals for 7 years.

**[61] Daniel 4:34** *And at the end of the days I Nebuchadnezzar lifted up mine eyes unto heaven, and mine understanding returned unto me, and I blessed the most High, and I praised and honoured him that liveth for ever, whose dominion is an everlasting dominion, and his kingdom is from generation to generation:*

- The king FINALLY lifts up his eyes to heaven.
- Are you going to lift up your eyes to heaven and finally realize that GOD is there?
- He's ruling this earth and the heavens. He has all the power.
- When He tells us to do something in here, we better do it.
- If not, we think we know better than God. That's pride. Then cometh destruction the Bible says.
- The king's understanding comes back. He becomes like a human again.

HE BLESSES AND PRAISES THE GOD THAT LIVES FOREVER AND EVER.

- Now, do you think the king is saved? I do, but it doesn't say it for sure.
- He realized he's there now. He could have rejected him again, but he didn't this time.
- God humbled the king. It was a punishment. But he took it, woke up, and praised God.
- And then watch what King Nebuchadnezzar says in verse 35.

**[62] Daniel 4:35** *And all the inhabitants of the earth are reputed as nothing: and he doeth according to his will in the army of heaven, and among the inhabitants of the earth: and none can stay his hand, or say unto him, What doest thou?*

- We are like nothing compared to God. God does what He wants, and it's always good.
- He does what He wants in heaven, and He does what He wants on earth.
- Satan has no power over God at all. Satan has no power over Jesus at all. Satan has no power over the Holy Spirit at all.
- That's why we need GOD at all times.
- NO ONE can stand up to God. That's why you need God on your side.
- Humble yourself and watch what happens.

**[63] Daniel 4:36** *At the same time my reason returned unto me; and for the glory of my kingdom, mine honour and brightness returned unto me; and my counsellors and my lords sought unto me; and I was established in my kingdom, and excellent majesty was added unto me.*

- The king is accepted back as king in the kingdom of Babylon.
- His honor returned. His brightness returned. His counselors and lords sought him once again.
- He was established in his kingdom once again and majesty was added to him.
- He turned to God. He gave HIM HONOR AND PRAISE.

**[64] Daniel 4:37** *Now I Nebuchadnezzar praise and extol and honour the King of heaven, all whose works are truth, and his ways judgment: and those that walk in pride he is able to abase.*

- King Nebuchadnezzar RAISED GOD to HIS rightful place.
- He realized he was walking in pride. He realized who was in control of all things.

**[65] Ecclesiastes 8:4** *Where the word of a king is, there is power: and who may say unto him, What doest thou?*

- This BIBLE is the word of THE KING – not just a KING, THE KING.
- This Bible has POWER. That's why we need to read it.
- That's why we need to study it. We need to understand what the KING wants.

**[66] Revelation 17:14** *These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful.*

- Be chosen and faithful today. FAITH ALONE saves you FOREVER.
- Know that JESUS is the LAMB who was slain for you. He took it for you.

**[67] Revelation 19:16** *And he hath on his vesture and on his thigh a name written, KING OF KINGS, AND LORD OF LORDS.*

- That's our KING right there. THE LORD JESUS CHRIST.
- He's the only one that can save you. Put all your trust in HIM to save you and you're saved.
- It's over. It's done.

Let's pray.

## SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 5

[2] The title of the sermon today is "DANIEL CHAPTER 5."

- Chapter 1 we learn about Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah.
- Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah are known as Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego.
- King Nebuchadnezzar comes and takes Jerusalem the capital city of JUDAH.
- God allows that to happen. Daniel, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego are children when this happens.
- The best children are brought back to Babylon with King Nebuchadnezzar.
- They take Daniel and his friends. They are raised up in the Babylonian ways.
- But they don't defile themselves with these false ways. God takes care of them.

**[3] Daniel 1:19-20 And the king communed with them; and among them all was found none like Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah: therefore stood they before the king. 20 And in all matters of wisdom and understanding, that the king inquired of them, he found them ten times better than all the magicians and astrologers that were in all his realm.**

- In Chapter 2, we see King Nebuchadnezzar have a dream that troubled him.
- He forgets the dream, but he wants his wise men to tell him the dream and the interpretation.
- Shadrach, Meshach, Abednego along with Daniel PRAY to God for help in this dream.
- If no one can tell the king this dream and the interpretation, he's putting all of them to death.
- God helps them and shows Daniel the dream and the interpretation of the dream.

**[4] Daniel 2:17-19 Then Daniel went to his house, and made the thing known to Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, his companions: 18 That they would desire mercies of the God of heaven concerning this secret; that Daniel and his fellows should not perish with the rest of the wise men of Babylon. 19 Then was the secret revealed unto Daniel in a night vision. Then Daniel blessed the God of heaven.**

- The dream Nebuchadnezzar had was about the 4 KINGDOMS in the great image he saw.
- And then we learn about an everlasting kingdom that comes when JESUS CHRIST arrives.
- Because Daniel tells the king his dream and the interpretation, he makes Daniel a ruler over Babylon.

**[5] Daniel 2:48-49 Then the king made Daniel a great man, and gave him many great gifts, and made him ruler over the whole province of Babylon, and chief of the governors over all the wise men of Babylon. 49 Then Daniel requested of the king, and he set Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, over the affairs of the province of Babylon: but Daniel sat in the gate of the king.**

- So we now see that Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego are setup as rulers as well.
- But Daniel is a greater ruler as he sits in the gate of the king.
- In Chapter 3, we see Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego stand up for God.
- They won't bow down to a false god. They don't compromise when it comes to God.

**[6] Daniel 3:16-18 Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, answered and said to the king, O Nebuchadnezzar, we are not careful to answer thee in this matter. 17 If it be so, our God whom we serve is able to deliver us from**



***the burning fiery furnace, and he will deliver us out of thine hand, O king. 18 But if not, be it known unto thee, O king, that we will not serve thy gods, nor worship the golden image which thou hast set up.***

- The king is ANGRY. He throws them into the fiery furnace.
- We see the SON OF GOD show up and save them from that fiery furnace.

***[7] Daniel 3:24-25 Then Nebuchadnezzar the king was astonished, and rose up in haste, and spake, and said unto his counsellors, Did not we cast three men bound into the midst of the fire? They answered and said unto the king, True, O king. 25 He answered and said, Lo, I see four men loose, walking in the midst of the fire, and they have no hurt; and the form of the fourth is like the Son of God.***

- They aren't hurt at all. They didn't know God was going to save them. But they stood up for God anyway.
- In no way, should you EVER support the worship of a false god.
- That's what they did right there. They didn't compromise for ANY REASON.
- In Chapter 4, we see the king humbled by GOD ALMIGHTY.
- He sends him out into the wilderness for 7 years and until he realizes GOD IS GOD and he's not.
- He realizes he only has the power because God put him in power.

***[8] Daniel 4:37 Now I Nebuchadnezzar praise and extol and honour the King of heaven, all whose works are truth, and his ways judgment: and those that walk in pride he is able to abase.***

- And that brings us to Daniel Chapter 5. That ends King Nebuchadnezzar.
- Now, we're going to see a new ruler in the kingdom of Babylon.

***[9] Daniel 5:1 Belshazzar the king made a great feast to a thousand of his lords, and drank wine before the thousand.***

- Belshazzar is the name of the King of Babylon at the time of Daniel Chapter 5 verse 1.
- Notice the beginning of his name. BEL. And remember, Daniel's Babylonian name is Belteshazzar.
- So their names are very close. "BEL" or "BAAL" is a false god.
- They name their people after the false god BAAL. We learn that about Daniel in Chapter 4.

***[10] Daniel 4:8 But at the last Daniel came in before me, whose name was Belteshazzar, according to the name of my god, and in whom is the spirit of the holy gods: and before him I told the dream, saying,***

- Bel is the false god of the Babylonians. Any false god is Satan himself. That's what he wants.

***[11] Jeremiah 51:44 And I will punish Bel in Babylon, and I will bring forth out of his mouth that which he hath swallowed up: and the nations shall not flow together any more unto him: yea, the wall of Babylon shall fall.***

- So Belshazzar is named after the false god BEL.
- Belshazzar wasn't the next king of Babylon after Nebuchadnezzar in Chapter 4.
- So there's a gap in time from the end of Chapter 4 to the start of Chapter 5.
- There's at least one king between Nebuchadnezzar and Belshazzar.
- His name was Evil-Merodach. And let's find some Scripture on him.



**[12] 2 Kings 25:27** *And it came to pass in the seven and thirtieth year of the captivity of Jehoiachin king of Judah, in the twelfth month, on the seven and twentieth day of the month, that Evil-merodach king of Babylon in the year that he began to reign did lift up the head of Jehoiachin king of Judah out of prison;*

- So we have King Nebuchadnezzar, then Evil-merodach, then maybe some other kings, then Belshazzar.
- I just wanted you to see the timing here and realize there's a gap of time between Chapter 4 and 5.

**[13] Jeremiah 27:6-7** *And now have I given all these lands into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, my servant; and the beasts of the field have I given him also to serve him. 7 And all nations shall serve him, and his son, and his son's son, until the very time of his land come: and then many nations and great kings shall serve themselves of him.*

- Realize that Belshazzar is the VERY LAST KING of Babylon. Babylon falls to the Medes and Persians.
- If you remember the great image from Daniel Chapter 4, the head of the image was Babylon.
- The arms and chest are the next kingdom and that is the Medes and Persians.
- So, let's read Daniel 5:1 again.

**[14] Daniel 5:1** *Belshazzar the king made a great feast to a thousand of his lords, and drank wine before the thousand.*

- So, this king is about to lose Babylon and he's making a great FEAST.
- He doesn't know what's about to happen. There's 1000 of his lords there.
- And they're drinking wine at this great feast. And something big is about to happen.
- They are partying, eating, drinking, and are merry. That reminds me of this passage in Matthew 24.

**[15] Matthew 24:42-44** *Watch therefore: for ye know not what hour your Lord doth come. 43 But know this, that if the goodman of the house had known in what watch the thief would come, he would have watched, and would not have suffered his house to be broken up. 44 Therefore be ye also ready: for in such an hour as ye think not the Son of man cometh.*

**[16] Matthew 24:45-48** *Who then is a faithful and wise servant, whom his lord hath made ruler over his household, to give them meat in due season? 46 Blessed is that servant, whom his lord when he cometh shall find so doing. 47 Verily I say unto you, That he shall make him ruler over all his goods. 48 But and if that evil servant shall say in his heart, My lord delayeth his coming;*

**[17] Matthew 24:49-51** *And shall begin to smite his fellow servants, and to eat and drink with the drunken; 50 The lord of that servant shall come in a day when he looketh not for him, and in an hour that he is not aware of, 51 And shall cut him asunder, and appoint him his portion with the hypocrites: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.*

- In Matthew 24 right there, Jesus gives us a warning. He says to make sure you're watching.
- Don't forget about Him. Don't party, get drunk, and do whatever you want.
- Jesus says, "I'll be coming back at an hour you won't realize is coming if you aren't watching."
- And that's exactly what happens to Belshazzar. Let's keep going.

**[18] Daniel 5:2** *Belshazzar, while he tasted the wine, commanded to bring the golden and silver vessels which his father Nebuchadnezzar had taken out of the temple which was in Jerusalem; that the king, and his princes, his wives, and his concubines, might drink therein.*

- King Nebuchadnezzar took all the gold and silver out of the temple in Jerusalem.
- Do you remember when we first learned that all of that stuff would be carried away to Babylon?
- We look to the book of 2 Kings as all of these stories are related.

**[19] 2 Kings 20:12** *At that time Berodach-baladan, the son of Baladan, king of Babylon, sent letters and a present unto Hezekiah: for he had heard that Hezekiah had been sick.*

- So this time period in 2 Kings is about 100 years before King Nebuchadnezzar carries the gold and silver away from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Let's continue in 2 Kings 20 verse 13.

**[20] 2 Kings 20:13** *And Hezekiah hearkened unto them, and shewed them all the house of his precious things, the silver, and the gold, and the spices, and the precious ointment, and all the house of his armour, and all that was found in his treasures: there was nothing in his house, nor in all his dominion, that Hezekiah shewed them not.*

- In the letter that the King of Babylon had sent, he must have asked to visit.
- So he visits and King Hezekiah of Judah shows the King of Babylon all their riches.
- That wasn't a very smart thing to do. Watch what the great PROPHET ISAIAH says to him next.

**[21] 2 Kings 20:14-15** *Then came Isaiah the prophet unto king Hezekiah, and said unto him, What said these men? and from whence came they unto thee? And Hezekiah said, They are come from a far country, even from Babylon. 15 And he said, What have they seen in thine house? And Hezekiah answered, All the things that are in mine house have they seen: there is nothing among my treasures that I have not shewed them.*

- King Hezekiah tells Isaiah that he showed them everything.

**[22] 2 Kings 20:16-17** *And Isaiah said unto Hezekiah, Hear the word of the LORD. 17 Behold, the days come, that all that is in thine house, and that which thy fathers have laid up in store unto this day, shall be carried into Babylon: nothing shall be left, saith the LORD.*

- In Daniel Chapter 5, Belshazzar is about to eat and drink from that gold and silver that Hezekiah showed to a previous King of Babylon.
- Isaiah prophesies about King Nebuchadnezzar carrying all of that away about 100 years before it happens.
- Now we're about 150 years or so after Isaiah prophesied in the Book of Daniel Chapter 5.
- So, you can get all these extra details from all these other books. They all fit together.
- Let's read Daniel 5 verse 2 again.

**[23] Daniel 5:2** *Belshazzar, while he tasted the wine, commanded to bring the golden and silver vessels which his father Nebuchadnezzar had taken out of the temple which was in Jerusalem; that the king, and his princes, his wives, and his concubines, might drink therein.*

- The king is having a feast with 1000 lords in his kingdom. But he also has wives and concubines there too.
- I just want to go over quickly wives and concubines. What is a concubine?
- It's a good question because we don't really call women concubines around here.
- Concubines are like SECONDARY WIVES that aren't good enough to be the PRIMARY WIFE.
- The first concubine mentioned in the Bible is in Genesis Chapter 22.

***[24] Genesis 22:23-24 And Bethuel begat Rebekah: these eight Milcah did bear to Nahor, Abraham's brother. 24 And his concubine, whose name was Reumah, she bare also Tebah, and Gaham, and Thahash, and Maachah.***

- That's the first time the word concubine is used. They were wives but like a secondary wife.
- Nahor was Abraham's brother and Nahor's concubine is REUMAH.
- A concubine is a wife but is usually used to bare additional children.
- And this is just like the story of Abram and Sarai with Hagar.

***[25] Genesis 16:3 And Sarai Abram's wife took Hagar her maid the Egyptian, after Abram had dwelt ten years in the land of Canaan, and gave her to her husband Abram to be his wife.***

- So, I stopped there in Daniel 5:2 to talk about concubines. They were wives but secondary wives.
- They weren't good enough to be the first wife.
- Well, look, that's not God's design. ONE HUSBAND, ONE WIFE is God's design.
- So, we don't usually have multiple wives at the same time in today's world in this country.
- But we do have people that live together without ever getting married. That's not God's design.
- That's called fornication and God HATES fornication. Let me show you what He says.

***[26] 1 Corinthians 5:11 But now I have written unto you not to keep company, if any man that is called a brother be a fornicator, or covetous, or an idolater, or a railer, or a drunkard, or an extortioner; with such an one no not to eat.***

- If someone calls themselves a CHRISTIAN and fornicates, we're not supposed to even eat with them.
- We need to be telling them that they need to get married.
- If a man doesn't want to get married but wants all the other benefits, he's saying you're like a concubine.
- You're not good enough for him to marry. So you need to get out of there. You deserve more than that.
- Same thing the other way around for me. The man wants to get married but the woman doesn't.
- She's saying, "Hey, you're my male concubine. You aren't good enough for me to marry."
- "I'm waiting for something else better to come along. But I'll take the other benefits for now."

NO, NO, NO!!! If you're not good enough for someone to marry, YOU NEVER GIVE THEM ANY BENEFITS.

- No one ever teaches this because people are scared to offend someone.
- Well, guess what? God teaches it over and over and over again within the Bible.
- Are we too good not to teach it here? We'll teach it here BECAUSE GOD says to teach it.

***[27] 1 Corinthians 6:18-20 Flee fornication. Every sin that a man doeth is without the body; but he that committeth fornication sinneth against his own body. 19 What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own? 20 For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's.***

- If you're saved and fornicating or having a sexual relationship outside of marriage, NOT GOOD.
- Why is it not good? You're sinning against your own body.
- When you're saved, you have the HOLY SPIRIT within you. God is there.
- He bought you. He purchased you and gave you eternal life. And He lives within you.
- And you're FORNICATING. He hates fornication.

***[28] 1 Corinthians 7:2-3 Nevertheless, to avoid fornication, let every man have his own wife, and let every woman have her own husband. 3 Let the husband render unto the wife due benevolence: and likewise also the wife unto the husband.***

- ONE WIFE, ONE HUSBAND. Stay that way for life. There is no other option in the Bible.
- The husband and wife should render DUE benevolence to each other. What's that mean?
- It means you should ALWAYS do good to your spouse, be kind, loving, and always do what's best for them.
- And of course we all know what doing best for someone else means. That's loving them.
- And what does that mean? FOLLOWING GOD'S COMMANDMENTS IS LOVE.
- That's how you love your husband or your wife. LOVE GOD and follow His commandments.
- When you do, that's what will ALWAYS be best for your spouse.

For example, if your wife COVETS after things and wants you to make her feel so very special for Valentine's Day by purchasing her a HUGE diamond ring, you DECLINE.

- God hates covetousness!!! Your wife should love you by not WANTING ANY MATERIAL things.
- Material things are of the world, and we don't need them.
- You don't feed her FLESHLY DESIRES by giving her anything and everything she wants.
- That's NOT LOVE. The world says that is love. GOD SAYS IT ISN'T. I'll go with God.

***[29] Ephesians 5:3 But fornication, and all uncleanness, or covetousness, let it not be once named among you, as becometh saints;***

- God says right there: "Hey, once you're saved, DON'T FORNICATE. DON'T COVET."
- If you decide to do it anyway, God can make your life here on earth a LIVING HELL.
- He will punish you because you are one of HIS CHILDREN and He takes care of HIS CHILDREN.

***[30] Proverbs 23:13-14 Withhold not correction from the child: for if thou beatest him with the rod, he shall not die. 14 Thou shalt beat him with the rod, and shalt deliver his soul from hell.***

- God wrote that SCRIPTURE. He'll do the exact same thing to you for fornication. He's serious.
- GET MARRIED. Don't be a concubine. Don't be a second class live-in husband or wife.
- I teach this today because I don't want to see you get punished by GOD ALMIGHTY.
- That's loving. Not teaching what God says is HATING YOU. It's easier on me to not teach it.
- That's called loving myself because it's easier for me not to offend someone.
- Let's go back to Daniel 5 and continue in verse 3.

***[31] Daniel 5:3 Then they brought the golden vessels that were taken out of the temple of the house of God which was at Jerusalem; and the king, and his princes, his wives, and his concubines, drank in them.***

- They brink these golden vessels out and they begin to drink the wine in these vessels.

- These vessels are from the HOUSE OF GOD.
- So you have this king who worships a false god drinking in the vessels from the house of God.
- He's having a party, going to get drunk on wine, and using God's stuff to do it.
- He clearly doesn't understand who GOD ALMIGHTY happens to be. He's watching.
- And then watch what he does. BAD MOVE.

***[32] Daniel 5:4 They drank wine, and praised the gods of gold, and of silver, of brass, of iron, of wood, and of stone.***

- They praise the gods of gold, silver, brass, iron, wood, and stone.
- They're praising gods who can't even breathe.
- For example, the god of Lebron James is sports. That's NUMBER ONE to him.
- The MLB commissioner recently said that the World Series Trophy is just a piece of metal.
- And everyone in the world of sports just goes off. But the MLB commissioner is correct.

But they all praise and worship sports. Sports is a false god that doesn't even breathe.

- It's a game that doesn't even have a body, it has no flesh, it doesn't breathe.
- Put sports first in your life, and you've made SPORTS your god.
- So you have all these people worshipping false gods in Daniel Chapter 5.
- Sounds just like our world today. Even the churches have false gods.
- They create their very own VERSION of the God within this Bible that fits them and all their desires.
- Let's see what happens next in verse 5.

***[33] Daniel 5:5 In the same hour came forth fingers of a man's hand, and wrote over against the candlestick upon the plaister of the wall of the king's palace: and the king saw the part of the hand that wrote.***

- As Belshazzar is drinking wine and having his party using God's vessels, he sees something.
- It's within the same hour. So keep in mind, this man is getting drunk on wine.
- The fingers of man's hand show up. Not the entire arm. Just the fingers of a man's hand.
- Picture this. There's a candlestick upon the wall and you're in the king's palace.
- You're sitting at the table having a great time.
- You look over and you see the part of the hand writing on the wall.
- You're like: "Whoa! Maybe I drank too much wine." You shake it off and look again. It's still there.

***[34] Daniel 5:6 Then the king's countenance was changed, and his thoughts troubled him, so that the joints of his loins were loosed, and his knees smote one against another.***

- So, the king's countenance or the look on his face changes. He gets a troubled look on his face.
- And he becomes scared and fearful. He's so scared that his knees start knocking together.
- We'd all be the same way if we saw a hand writing on the wall and the message is to us.
- Imagine how scared you are when your legs are shaking and your knees knocking together.
- That reminds me of little T when she was getting swim lessons and jumping off the diving block.
- Her little legs were shaking and hitting together. She's an amazing little thing.

***[35] Daniel 5:7 The king cried aloud to bring in the astrologers, the Chaldeans, and the soothsayers. And the king spake, and said to the wise men of Babylon, Whosoever shall read this writing, and shew me the***

***interpretation thereof, shall be clothed with scarlet, and have a chain of gold about his neck, and shall be the third ruler in the kingdom.***

- The king cries out to the so-called wise men. The astrologers and soothsayers.
- He wants to know the interpretation of what was written on the wall.
- Whoever can read it and interpret it will be raised up in his kingdom.
- They shall be the THIRD ruler in the kingdom. Why the THIRD RULER?

Some people think that there was another king Nabonidus that was away for a while.

- They believe that Belshazzar was reigning as king while he was away.
- They say that Belshazzar was his son. Spent most of his time trying to restore order in the kingdom.
- And that he moved to Tema and left the kingdom to his son Belshazzar.
- But the Bible doesn't say any of that.
- It could mean the KING was first, the queen was second, and then the THIRD RULER would be whoever interprets the writing on the wall for King Belshazzar.

***[36] Daniel 5:8-9 Then came in all the king's wise men: but they could not read the writing, nor make known to the king the interpretation thereof. 9 Then was king Belshazzar greatly troubled, and his countenance was changed in him, and his lords were astonished.***

- As expected, none of the so-called wise men could read the writing on the wall.
- Then the king is really troubled. He wants to know what it means. I would too. He's not giving up.

***[37] Daniel 5:10 Now the queen, by reason of the words of the king and his lords, came into the banquet house: and the queen spake and said, O king, live for ever: let not thy thoughts trouble thee, nor let thy countenance be changed:***

- So the queen arrives to help her husband.
- "O KING, LIVE FOR EVER." This is how the king's were usually greeted.
- But King Belshazzar sure isn't going to live forever. Let's see what the Queen has to say.

***[38] Daniel 5:11 There is a man in thy kingdom, in whom is the spirit of the holy gods; and in the days of thy father light and understanding and wisdom, like the wisdom of the gods, was found in him; whom the king Nebuchadnezzar thy father, the king, I say, thy father, made master of the magicians, astrologers, Chaldeans, and soothsayers;***

- There is a man who has the spirit of the holy gods. She doesn't understand there's ONE GOD.
- She says, "In the days of THY FATHER light and understanding and wisdom was found in him."
- Understand that King Nebuchadnezzar wasn't his FATHER. But he was in his line.
- The Bible uses that terminology all throughout. For example, Abraham is the father of all saved.
- He is our father since we're saved through faith.

***[39] Romans 4:16-17 Therefore it is of faith, that it might be by grace; to the end the promise might be sure to all the seed; not to that only which is of the law, but to that also which is of the faith of Abraham; who is the father of us all, 17 (As it is written, I have made thee a father of many nations,) before him whom he believed, even God, who quickeneth the dead, and calleth those things which be not as though they were.***



- And being the father of many is within the Bible everywhere.

**[40] Genesis 4:20 And Adah bare Jabal: he was the father of such as dwell in tents, and of such as have cattle.**

- So just keep in mind that Nebuchadnezzar wasn't Belshazzar's actual father but he was in that line.
- He was most likely his grandfather or great grandfather.

**[41] Daniel 5:12 Forasmuch as an excellent spirit, and knowledge, and understanding, interpreting of dreams, and shewing of hard sentences, and dissolving of doubts, were found in the same Daniel, whom the king named Belteshazzar: now let Daniel be called, and he will shew the interpretation.**

- The queen mentions Daniel. And look, Daniel must be pretty old now. Let's see what happens.
- They are going to call for Daniel. If anyone can do it, it must be Daniel.

**[42] Daniel 5:13 Then was Daniel brought in before the king. And the king spake and said unto Daniel, Art thou that Daniel, which art of the children of the captivity of Judah, whom the king my father brought out of Jewry?**

- It appears that the king doesn't know Daniel at all but has heard about Daniel from the queen.
- He asks, "Are you THAT Daniel that I've heard about?"

**[43] Daniel 5:14 I have even heard of thee, that the spirit of the gods is in thee, and that light and understanding and excellent wisdom is found in thee.**

- Now he needs Daniel. He's trying to puff Daniel up now because he needs something from him.

**[44] Daniel 5:15-16 And now the wise men, the astrologers, have been brought in before me, that they should read this writing, and make known unto me the interpretation thereof: but they could not shew the interpretation of the thing: 16 And I have heard of thee, that thou canst make interpretations, and dissolve doubts: now if thou canst read the writing, and make known to me the interpretation thereof, thou shalt be clothed with scarlet, and have a chain of gold about thy neck, and shalt be the third ruler in the kingdom.**

- He tells Daniel that he will raise him up in his kingdom.
- Belshazzar doesn't realize he's about to lose the kingdom anyway.
- "I'll give you a chain of gold. Scarlet clothing." Do you think Daniel cared about that stuff?
- Let's see what Daniel says. I love this part.

**[45] Daniel 5:17 Then Daniel answered and said before the king, Let thy gifts be to thyself, and give thy rewards to another; yet I will read the writing unto the king, and make known to him the interpretation.**

- Daniel says, "Hey, you can keep your gifts. Give them to yourself. Give the rewards to someone else."
- He says, "But, I'll still read the writing to you and give you the interpretation. I'll do it for nothing."

**[46] Daniel 5:18 O thou king, the most high God gave Nebuchadnezzar thy father a kingdom, and majesty, and glory, and honour:**



- Daniel starts telling the king what he wants to know. He gives the king some background information first.
- THE ONE TRUE GOD gave King Nebuchadnezzar his power. It came from God and not anyone else.
- Understand that today. If you have power, money, health, wisdom, knowledge, glory, honor:
- All of these things you have come from GOD ALMIGHTY. He can take it away any time.
- He did that with King Nebuchadnezzar. He did it with Pharaoh. He'll do it to you and I if needed.
- He can take your job away, your home away, your money, your health, your family.
- GOD ALMIGHTY does what He needs to do and He has a reason for all things that He does.

***[47] Isaiah 55:9 For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts.***

- In other words, don't mess with THE ONE TRUE GOD. He'll break you down.
- He'll humble you if you won't do it yourself. He'll break you down. He'll raise you up.

***[48] Ecclesiastes 3:1-3 To every thing there is a season, and a time to every purpose under the heaven: 2 A time to be born, and a time to die; a time to plant, and a time to pluck up that which is planted; 3 A time to kill, and a time to heal; a time to break down, and a time to build up;***

- God appoints your time to be born. Your time to die. Your time to be broken down.
- And your time to be built up. He's in control. Understand that today. HIS WAYS ARE HIGHER.
- That's what Belshazzar wasn't understanding so Daniel is teaching him here. He's preaching.
- Let's continue in verse 19 of Daniel Chapter 5. Daniel is preaching. Let's hear how he preaches.
- Notice and see if he's always so very nice and loving like the world teaches today.

***[49] Daniel 5:19 And for the majesty that he gave him, all people, nations, and languages, trembled and feared before him: whom he would he slew; and whom he would he kept alive; and whom he would he set up; and whom he would he put down.***

- God gave King Nebuchadnezzar his power. People trembled before King Nebuchadnezzar.
- Why? Because he slewed who we wanted. He kept alive who he wanted. He setup who he wanted.
- He put down who he wanted. Why? Because God gave him that power.

***[50] Daniel 5:20 But when his heart was lifted up, and his mind hardened in pride, he was deposed from his kingly throne, and they took his glory from him:***

- This is what we see in Daniel Chapter 4. King Nebuchadnezzar was made like an animal in the wilderness.

***[51] Daniel 5:21 And he was driven from the sons of men; and his heart was made like the beasts, and his dwelling was with the wild asses: they fed him with grass like oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of heaven; till he knew that the most high God ruled in the kingdom of men, and that he appointeth over it whomsoever he will.***

- In other words, Daniel is preaching to this king that GOD IS IN POWER and He does what He wants.
- No man has ANY power unless God allows HIM to have that power.
- God can knock you out any time He wants.
- And now let's see if Daniel is scared to preach the truth to King Belshazzar.

- Notice throughout the Bible that GOD'S PROPHETS aren't afraid to preach the truth.
- That's what we need to be like. Don't be scared that someone might get mad at you.

**[52] Daniel 5:22 *And thou his son, O Belshazzar, hast not humbled thine heart, though thou knewest all this;***

- Daniel tells the king that he knew all of this and he didn't humble himself.
- Daniel states the truth. Do you think this offended the king?
- Oh yeah, you better know it did because he was lifted up with pride. That's why he's saying this.
- Watch what Daniel says next in verse 23.

**[53] Daniel 5:23 *But hast lifted up thyself against the Lord of heaven; and they have brought the vessels of his house before thee, and thou, and thy lords, thy wives, and thy concubines, have drunk wine in them; and thou hast praised the gods of silver, and gold, of brass, iron, wood, and stone, which see not, nor hear, nor know: and the God in whose hand thy breath is, and whose are all thy ways, hast thou not glorified:***

- This king has lifted himself up AGAINST the LORD OF HEAVEN. Do you understand what that means?
- THE GOD IN HEAVEN!!! He is there. Don't lift yourself up against HIM.
- That's like saying: "Hey, I know fornication is wrong but I'll do it anyway."
- That's called lifting yourself up against the GOD OF HEAVEN. He'll knock you down.

Notice what it says on the last part of verse 23:

- "AND THE GOD IN WHOSE HAND THY BREATH IS."
- Understand that God has your breath in HIS HANDS. He can let go of that breath any time.
- He can squeeze it away from you slowly or take it with force all at once.
- That's God. We better start to understand who He is and realize He is in control.
- That's what Daniel is preaching to this king, and that's why this Daniel Chapter 5 is here for us to see.

**[54] Daniel 5:24 *Then was the part of the hand sent from him; and this writing was written.***

- Daniel tells King Belshazzar that the PART OF THE HAND was sent from GOD ALMIGHTY.
- GOD ALMIGHTY wrote the writing on the wall. Imagine if you were hearing that for the first time.
- You might not want to know what that writing says if you've been worshipping false gods.
- You took the vessels of God's house and have lifted yourself up against Him. Not good.
- You might want to take off running. You can run, but you can't hide from God.

**[55] Jeremiah 23:22-24 *But if they had stood in my counsel, and had caused my people to hear my words, then they should have turned them from their evil way, and from the evil of their doings. 23 Am I a God at hand, saith the LORD, and not a God afar off? 24 Can any hide himself in secret places that I shall not see him? saith the LORD. Do not I fill heaven and earth? saith the LORD.***

- God teaches us what He wants in this Bible. He says, "HEY, TURN FROM YOUR EVIL WAYS!!!"
- GOD FILLS the heaven and the earth. He knows. He sees. He is THE LIVING GOD. We better wake up.
- Let's see what the writing on the wall was and what it means. Verse 25.

**[56] Daniel 5:25 *And this is the writing that was written, MENE, MENE, TEKEL, UPHARSIN.***

- The Babylonians couldn't read the words. But Daniel could.
- MEN-AY, MEN-AY, TEK-AL, U-PHAR-SIN.
- And keep in mind that Daniel Chapter 5 is originally written in the ARAMAIC language.
- It's not written in the Hebrew language.
- MEN-AY means NUMBERED.
- TEK-AL means BE WEIGHED.
- U-PHAR-SIN means to split up or divide.

So, the words read: NUMBERED, NUMBERED, BE WEIGHED, DIVIDE.

- But Daniel is going to give the interpretation of what all this means.
- Let's see what this all means in verse 26.

**[57] Daniel 5:26 This is the interpretation of the thing: MENE; God hath numbered thy kingdom, and finished it.**

- That's a fearful thing to hear for a king. You're FINISHED.

**[58] Daniel 5:27 TEKEL; Thou art weighed in the balances, and art found wanting.**

- When God weighs you, you don't want to be found wanting.
- You want to be made whole. You want to be SAVED by grace through faith.
- In other words, this BELSHAZZAR is in BIG TROUBLE.
- Without a doubt, this is the WORST DAY of HIS LIFE.
- Imagine the sinking feeling he gets when he hears this.

You don't want to get that same feeling one day. Make the decision today to BE SAVED.

- And then make the decision to OBEY GOD and do what He asks for the rest of your life.
- If you do, God will take care of you in this life and for eternity. Don't you want to be safe?
- You don't want to end up like Belshazzar.

**[59] Daniel 5:28 PERES; Thy kingdom is divided, and given to the Medes and Persians.**

- The prophecy from Daniel Chapter 3 is being fulfilled. Daniel spoke of this to King Nebuchadnezzar.
- God gave King Nebuchadnezzar the dream and warned him over and over again.
- King Belshazzar knew the warning. Daniel just told him he knew about it and didn't care.
- The Babylonian kingdom is NOW going to be divided and given to TWO.
- The MEDES and the PERSIANS will now be taking over.

**[60] Daniel 5:29 Then commanded Belshazzar, and they clothed Daniel with scarlet, and put a chain of gold about his neck, and made a proclamation concerning him, that he should be the third ruler in the kingdom.**

- Daniel said he didn't want anything, but the king did what he said.
- They clothed Daniel with scarlet, put a chain of gold around his neck, and made him 3<sup>rd</sup> ruler in the kingdom.
- But as we know, Daniel won't be the third ruler in the kingdom for very long.
- He just said, "You're kingdom is FINISHED!!!" So, let's see how long it takes for this to come true.

**[61] Daniel 5:30** *In that night was Belshazzar the king of the Chaldeans slain.*

- So, Belshazzar was killed that same night.

**[62] Daniel 5:31** *And Darius the Median took the kingdom, being about threescore and two years old.*

- We see Darius the MEDIAN taking the kingdom from Belshazzar.
- Let's see how it was done from the prophet Isaiah. And realize this was all prophecy.
- Remember, Isaiah said it would happen this way long before it ever happened.

**[63] Isaiah 13:17-19** *Behold, I will stir up the Medes against them, which shall not regard silver; and as for gold, they shall not delight in it. 18 Their bows also shall dash the young men to pieces; and they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb; their eye shall not spare children. 19 And Babylon, the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldees' excellency, shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah.*

- And then watch this next verse from Isaiah because it's still the exact same way.

**[64] Isaiah 13:20-21** *It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation: neither shall the Arabian pitch tent there; neither shall the shepherds make their fold there. 21 But wild beasts of the desert shall lie there; and their houses shall be full of doleful creatures; and owls shall dwell there, and satyrs shall dance there.*

- What saith the SCRIPTURE? The SCRIPTURE says that land shall NEVER be inhabited.
- Who is this DARIUS THE MEDIAN that we see at the end of Chapter 5?
- Just keep in mind that there are 2 kings named DARIUS in the Bible.
- One is from the Medes and one is from the Persians.
- The Darius in the Book of Daniel in Chapter 5, 6, 9, and 11 is Darius the Median.

**[65] Daniel 9:1** *In the first year of Darius the son of Ahasuerus, of the seed of the Medes, which was made king over the realm of the Chaldeans;*

- So this Darius is the son of Ahasuerus. He is the one who takes over after Belshazzar is killed.
- Along with Darius the Median, you'll see King Cyrus of Persia ruling as well.
- Remember, the Medes and the Persians split the kingdom of Babylon.

**[66] Daniel 6:28** *So this Daniel prospered in the reign of Darius, and in the reign of Cyrus the Persian.*

- So God took care of Daniel throughout the reign of the Babylonians. Look back to Chapter 1 of Daniel.

**[67] Daniel 1:20-21** *And in all matters of wisdom and understanding, that the king inquired of them, he found them ten times better than all the magicians and astrologers that were in all his realm. 21 And Daniel continued even unto the first year of king Cyrus.*

- Daniel continued in the kingdom of Babylon until it was finished.
- So now, in the Book of Daniel, we finish Chapter 5 and we're at the FIRST YEAR OF KING CYRUS.
- And of course, Daniel continues to prosper in every kingdom that God places Daniel.

- Why? Because HE FOLLOWED GOD. He walked with God. He obeyed God.
- God can do the same thing for you. Let's do what God asks us to do.

Let's pray.

## SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 6

[2] The title of the sermon today is “DANIEL CHAPTER 6.”

- So far we've been through Daniel Chapter 1 through 5 verse by verse.
- We know that Daniel is a great prophet in the Bible. DANIEL IS A BOOK FILLED WITH PROPHECY.
- There are 12 chapters and remember, the Book of Daniel is clearly cut in half just like Revelation.

Chapters 1 through 6 are in chronological order just like Revelation Chapters 1 through 11.

- We go back in time once we hit Daniel Chapter 7. Same thing with Revelation Chapter 12.
- Then Daniel Chapters 7 through 12 are in chronological order just like Revelation 12 through 22.
- When we get to Daniel Chapter 7, we'll see it's more difficult to understand than Chapters 1 through 6.
- Same thing with the Book of Revelation. The division in the books is very clear and obvious.

In Daniel Chapter 1, we see Daniel, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego taken.

- They request to not eat what the King is giving them. They prosper.
- They're seen as the best of the best.

In Chapter 2, we see King Nebuchadnezzar forgetting his dream.

- He wants to know the dream and the interpretation. The magicians tell him he's crazy.
- The King is going to kill all of them. Daniel prays to God with Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego.
- God shows Daniel the dream and the interpretation. Daniel takes that to the King.
- Daniel is rewarded by the King and made a ruler in his kingdom.

In Chapter 3, we see King Nebuchadnezzar making this golden image for everyone to worship.

- Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego won't bow down and worship the image.
- They're cast into the fiery furnace. The Son of God comes down from heaven and saved them.
- Not even one thread on their clothes is burned. Nebuchadnezzar sees the miracle with his own eyes.

In Chapter 4, King Nebuchadnezzar tells us about his experience with finding the one true God.

- He has a dream. Daniel interprets the dream.
- King Nebuchadnezzar loses power and goes to live out with the beasts of the field.
- God brings him down. God humbles him. King Nebuchadnezzar accepts all of it.
- The king confesses that God Almighty is the one true God.

In Chapter 5, we see King Belshazzar having a great feast.

- He sees hand writing on the wall that scares and greatly troubles the king.
- No one can interpret the writing on the wall. The queen remembers Daniel.
- Daniel preaches against the King right there. Pride and idolatry.
- Daniel interprets the writing on the wall. It's not good for King Belshazzar.
- At the end of Chapter 5, we see this.

**[3] Daniel 5:30-31 In that night was Belshazzar the king of the Chaldeans slain. 31 And Darius the Median took the kingdom, being about threescore and two years old.**

- King Belshazzar is slain. The Babylonians or Chaldeans are the same thing.
- We see the Babylonians are defeated by the Medes and the Persians.
- Who takes over as king? DARIUS THE MEDIAN takes the Kingdom. He's about 62 years old.
- Let's start there in Daniel Chapter 6. We're going to see the type of leader we have in Darius the Median.

***[4] Daniel 6:1-2 It pleased Darius to set over the kingdom an hundred and twenty princes, which should be over the whole kingdom; 2 And over these three presidents; of whom Daniel was first: that the princes might give accounts unto them, and the king should have no damage.***

- We see that King Darius setup a new structure and new order to the kingdom.
- He sets up 120 princes over the entire kingdom.
- Over the 120 princes he sets up 3 presidents. The first president is DANIEL.
- Daniel is SECOND RULER in the entire kingdom. Only the King is above Daniel.
- If you remember, King Belshazzar just promised Daniel THIRD RULER in the Kingdom.
- Well, now he's the second ruler in the KINGDOM.

But notice what it says about the 120 princes and the 3 presidents at the end of verse 2.

- "That the princes might give accounts unto them, and the king should have no damage."
- The 3 presidents are going to make sure the 120 princes are ruling properly.
- If one of the princes is caught up in some scandal, it looks bad on the king. He doesn't want that.
- So you can see he's starting out as a decent king. He doesn't want corruption in his kingdom.

This is just like on a NAVY SHIP. The captain is responsible for everyone.

- If someone does something wrong, the Captain is going to take the fall.
- How could you allow something like that to happen on YOUR SHIP, on YOUR WATCH?
- Why is it the Captain's fault? Because the Captain needs to make sure he has the right leaders in place.
- Responsibility and leadership flows down from the CAPTAIN.
- If he puts the right leaders in place at every level, everything should flow smoothly.
- If not, when someone messes up, it comes back to the Captain.

And that's exactly how it's working here in Daniel Chapter 6.

- King Darius sets up 120 princes as leaders and 3 presidents to oversee those 120 princes.
- He knows if corruption is taking place in his kingdom that it's going to look bad on him.
- That's one reason he chooses Daniel as HIS TOP PRESIDENT. Daniel has a great reputation.
- But let's watch what happens next. Verse 3.

***[5] Daniel 6:3 Then this Daniel was preferred above the presidents and princes, because an excellent spirit was in him; and the king thought to set him over the whole realm.***

- Daniel is PREFERRED above ALL THE PRESIDENTS AND ALL THE PRINCES.
- Why? He has an excellent SPIRIT within HIM. That's the SPIRIT OF GOD within Daniel.
- Because of that, the King wants Daniel to be OVER THE WHOLE REALM.

***[6] Proverbs 22:29 Seest thou a man diligent in his business? he shall stand before kings; he shall not stand before mean men.***



- Daniel was diligent in HIS BUSINESS. He was steady. He worked hard. He wasn't idle or negligent.
- "HE SHALL STAND BEFORE KINGS." That's exactly what Daniel did.
- He didn't stand among the average person or the MEAN person. Mean is average.
- Daniel was lifted up BY GOD because Daniel had the SPIRIT OF GOD with him.
- And because of this, the other Presidents and Princes didn't like Daniel. The King preferred Daniel.
- The King would listen to Daniel over the others. They didn't like that.
- That reminds me of the story of Joseph and his brothers.

***[7] Genesis 37:3-4 Now Israel loved Joseph more than all his children, because he was the son of his old age: and he made him a coat of many colours. 4 And when his brethren saw that their father loved him more than all his brethren, they hated him, and could not speak peaceably unto him.***

- This happens all the time in this world.
- Other people get jealous when someone they love and respect prefers someone else above them.
- At work, people get chosen for promotions over other people. People get angry.
- Jacob OR Israel loved Joseph more than his other children and they got angry at JOSEPH.
- Why not get angry at JACOB? Instead, the people usually get angry at the person who can't help it.
- So, what did Joseph's brothers do? Let's see.

***[8] Genesis 37:20-22 Come now therefore, and let us slay him, and cast him into some pit, and we will say, Some evil beast hath devoured him: and we shall see what will become of his dreams. 21 And Reuben heard it, and he delivered him out of their hands; and said, Let us not kill him. 22 And Reuben said unto them, Shed no blood, but cast him into this pit that is in the wilderness, and lay no hand upon him; that he might rid him out of their hands, to deliver him to his father again.***

- Most of his brothers wanted to kill him and throw him into a pit.
- They didn't kill him but they did throw him into a pit. They hated him that much. Why?
- All because Jacob loved Joseph more than them. The same thing is happening to Daniel.
- And remember, Daniel isn't a young man any more. He's older now. Daniel is a very wise man.

***[9] Daniel 6:4 Then the presidents and princes sought to find occasion against Daniel concerning the kingdom; but they could find none occasion nor fault; forasmuch as he was faithful, neither was there any error or fault found in him.***

- First thing they try to do is find some occasion or fault in Daniel. They try to find some mistake he made.
- That's what the world today does in everything. If you get a politician running for office, slander him.
- Try to find everything that he's ever done wrong and put it out there for the world to see.
- That's what people do when they're jealous of someone else. SLANDER THEM.
- Go on Facebook or Twitter and start slandering the person. That's what people do now.
- Be ready for that in your life if you ever find yourself in a similar position to Daniel.
- And it's difficult to be like Daniel, but you can be ONLY THROUGH THE SPIRIT OF GOD. Try your best.

***[10] Psalm 37:12 The wicked plotteth against the just, and gnasheth upon him with his teeth.***

***[11] Psalm 37:32 The wicked watcheth the righteous, and seeketh to slay him.***

- If you're a saved person and doing things for God, the wicked will seek to SLAY YOU.
- The Bible says so over and over again so be ready for that. It's normal. Don't get upset. Be ready.

***[12] Proverbs 29:27 An unjust man is an abomination to the just: and he that is upright in the way is abomination to the wicked.***

***[13] Ecclesiastes 4:4 Again, I considered all travail, and every right work, that for this a man is envied of his neighbour. This is also vanity and vexation of spirit.***

- The prophets in the Bible were ALWAYS envied. People hated them. Daniel included.
- What about the prophet Jeremiah?

***[14] Jeremiah 18:18 Then said they, Come, and let us devise devices against Jeremiah; for the law shall not perish from the priest, nor counsel from the wise, nor the word from the prophet. Come, and let us smite him with the tongue, and let us not give heed to any of his words.***

- The Bible gives us all these examples so we can be ready.
- Don't give someone ammunition against you to slander your name.
- Watch how Jeremiah responds to these people. He goes to the Lord in prayer.

***[15] Jeremiah 18:23 Yet, LORD, thou knowest all their counsel against me to slay me: forgive not their iniquity, neither blot out their sin from thy sight, but let them be overthrown before thee; deal thus with them in the time of thine anger.***

- Jeremiah doesn't take action to slay them. He doesn't get revenge himself.
- What does he do? HE PRAYS TO GOD TO NOT FORGIVE THEIR INIQUITY. THEY'RE EVIL PEOPLE.
- You can pray the same. If someone HATES you because of God, that means they're evil.
- Evil people will attempt to hurt people who are doing good. We don't ever want to be like that.
- And what's good? Doing good is what the BIBLE says is good. Preaching a false GOSPEL is not good.
- I pray against people who preach a false GOSPEL. God, please open up their eyes or stop them.
- We don't need more EVIL in this world with a FALSE GOSPEL.

Jesus Christ HIMSELF was delivered up to Pilate because of ENVY the Bible says.

- They couldn't find anything wrong with Jesus. He NEVER did anything wrong.
- They HATED Jesus for that. He did miracles that helped people like no one else could.

***[16] Matthew 27:17-18 Therefore when they were gathered together, Pilate said unto them, Whom will ye that I release unto you? Barabbas, or Jesus which is called Christ? 18 For he knew that for envy they had delivered him.***

- But, do you remember what the Pharisees did to Jesus throughout HIS LIFE on earth?
- They would search out the smallest little things because they couldn't find anything wrong.

***[17] Mark 7:2 And when they saw some of his disciples eat bread with defiled, that is to say, with unwashen, hands, they found fault.***

- People will find something at fault with you. They'll look for the smallest little things.
- They'll turn them into big things. But they didn't understand that Jesus is the WORD OF GOD.
- He wrote the SCRIPTURES. He knows what they say. He's not breaking God's law. He wrote it.

These princes and presidents in the Kingdom of the Medes went looking for something wrong that Daniel did.

- Did they find anything to slander Daniel with? No, they didn't. NOTHING.
- They couldn't catch him on anything. Watch what Daniel 6:4 says again.

***[18] Daniel 6:4 Then the presidents and princes sought to find occasion against Daniel concerning the kingdom; but they could find none occasion nor fault; forasmuch as he was faithful, neither was there any error or fault found in him.***

- They found nothing wrong. HE WAS FAITHFUL. No error or fault found in him. NONE.

***[19] Luke 23:14-15 Said unto them, Ye have brought this man unto me, as one that perverteth the people: and, behold, I, having examined him before you, have found no fault in this man touching those things whereof ye accuse him: 15 No, nor yet Herod: for I sent you to him; and, lo, nothing worthy of death is done unto him.***

- Pilate and Herod found NOTHING wrong with Jesus. No error. No fault. NONE.
- We're supposed to do our best to be LIKE JESUS. If you've made mistakes, change it now.

***[20] Philippians 2:15 That ye may be blameless and harmless, the sons of God, without rebuke, in the midst of a crooked and perverse nation, among whom ye shine as lights in the world;***

- THAT YE MAY BE BLAMELESS AND HARMLESS, the SONS OF GOD.
- We need to act like that and follow God's commandments. We're in a crooked and perverse nation.
- They will do their best to slander you. Nothing is off limits in this perverse nation.
- YOU NEED TO SHINE AS LIGHTS IN THE WORLD. That's what Daniel did. People didn't like it.

***[21] Titus 2:8 Sound speech, that cannot be condemned; that he that is of the contrary part may be ashamed, having no evil thing to say of you.***

- Always speak well so you can't be condemned. How do you do that? Always talk about the Bible.
- Wherever you go and whoever you're with, talk about the Bible.

***[22] 1 Peter 4:15 But let none of you suffer as a murderer, or as a thief, or as an evildoer, or as a busybody in other men's matters.***

- Don't be a busybody in other people's business. Leave them alone. Stay out of people's business.
- Be about God's business. Get out of their business. Stick to God's BUSINESS.

***[23] Luke 2:49 And he said unto them, How is it that ye sought me? wist ye not that I must be about my Father's business?***

- If you ALWAYS stick to God's business, no one will find any fault with you.
- They won't find that you stole something, that you made a mistake in the books, that you lied.

- We can do this BECAUSE Daniel was able to do this. TRUST IN GOD and HE WILL HELP YOU.

**[24] Psalm 27:11 Teach me thy way, O LORD, and lead me in a plain path, because of mine enemies.**

- So, these evil men in the MEDIAN KINGDOM don't give up so easily.
- Watch what they do next and pay attention because this is what people will do to you.
- They'll follow the same order of execution. If they can't find something wrong, what's next?

**[25] Daniel 6:5 Then said these men, We shall not find any occasion against this Daniel, except we find it against him concerning the law of his God.**

- So now we're learning how people will go about slandering us. They did it to Daniel.
- We'll use the LAW OF HIS GOD to find something against HIM.
- So, in today's world, what's an example of this? It's very easy to find many things in today's world.
- They'll go find something in GOD'S LAW that isn't acceptable in today's world.
- And they'll use YOUR BELIEFS to target you and slander you that way.
- What's an example?

**[26] Leviticus 20:13 If a man also lie with mankind, as he lieth with a woman, both of them have committed an abomination: they shall surely be put to death; their blood shall be upon them.**

- Is God's law perfect? That's part of HIS LAW right there.
- A man that lies with another man shall be put to death. The government should do this.
- In today's world, that's becoming HATE SPEECH. They say, "Well, people can't help it."
- "People don't have a choice." They try to group it with racism.
- If you didn't have a choice to be a homosexual, God wouldn't have written Leviticus 20:13.

God doesn't give you a choice on your RACE, whether you're red, yellow, black, or white.

- So God doesn't make ANY RULES against races. If a man be white, he shall be put to death.
- He does make a RULE against homosexuality, though. So it is a choice.
- People will call you hateful for believing what the Bible says. That's an example.
- Yes, I'm an old-time Christian and I'm going to walk in the old time ways.

**[27] Jeremiah 6:16 Thus saith the LORD, Stand ye in the ways, and see, and ask for the old paths, where is the good way, and walk therein, and ye shall find rest for your souls. But they said, We will not walk therein.**

- The OLD PATHS are the GOOD WAYS the Bible says. Walk therein and you will find rest for your souls.
- "WE WILL NOT WALK THEREIN." That sounds just like so-called Christians today.
- They won't take Leviticus 20:13 as perfect. Why? They're scared of what the world says about them.
- But watch what the Bible says about people who don't want anything to do with Leviticus 20:13.

**[28] Jeremiah 6:18-19 Therefore hear, ye nations, and know, O congregation, what is among them. 19 Hear, O earth: behold, I will bring evil upon this people, even the fruit of their thoughts, because they have not hearkened unto my words, nor to my law, but rejected it.**

- Reject God's laws and He'll bring evil upon you. The entire Bible says this.

- And again, those so-called Christians don't want to hear that part either.
- But just because you cover your ears, that won't stop God from bringing the evil upon you.
- You can cover your ears and your eyes all you want. THE WORD OF GOD ENDURES FOREVER.
- You can't stop it. You can't take it away. It's ETERNAL. The more you ignore it, the more it's there.
- People will try to use the LAW OF GOD against you when they can't find anything else.

**[29] Daniel 6:6 Then these presidents and princes assembled together to the king, and said thus unto him, King Darius, live for ever.**

- Daniel wasn't there with them. It's only the ones conspiring against Daniel.
- They come together to the King. "O KING DARIUS, LIVE FOREVER."
- They continue speaking to the King in verse 7.

**[30] Daniel 6:7 All the presidents of the kingdom, the governors, and the princes, the counsellors, and the captains, have consulted together to establish a royal statute, and to make a firm decree, that whosoever shall ask a petition of any God or man for thirty days, save of thee, O king, he shall be cast into the den of lions.**

- This smaller group of princes and presidents come together to the King.
- They say, "ALL THE PRESIDENTS OF THE KINGDOM, the Governors, the princes, the counsellors, and the captains came together."
- ALL OF US say that "whosoever shall ask a petition of ANY GOD or man for 30 days, except you O KING, shall be cast into the den of lions."

Did you notice that they're LYING to KING DARIUS?

- Daniel didn't agree to that, but they said ALL THE PRESIDENTS OF THE KINGDOM have consulted.
- They're liars. They misrepresented Daniel. He never agreed to that.
- They're doing this to set a snare or trap for Daniel.
- They know Daniel will not STOP worshipping and praying to God.

"WHOSOEVER shall ask a petition of any God shall be cast into the den of lions."

- Praying to God would be breaking this law.
- The one who breaks this law will be thrown into the LION'S DEN.
- Let's see what happens.

**[31] Daniel 6:8-9 Now, O king, establish the decree, and sign the writing, that it be not changed, according to the law of the Medes and Persians, which altereth not. 9 Wherefore king Darius signed the writing and the decree.**

- Notice that the LAW OF MEDES AND PERSIANS says that it can't be altered once signed into law.
- It can't be changed. The king thinks that all his presidents and princes agreed on this law.
- Daniel wasn't included. The King didn't know that. They lied to the King.
- But the law has already been signed and it can't be changed now.
- In the Book of Esther we see the same thing. We see that the King's law cannot be changed.

**[32] Daniel 6:10** *Now when Daniel knew that the writing was signed, he went into his house; and his windows being open in his chamber toward Jerusalem, he kneeled upon his knees three times a day, and prayed, and gave thanks before his God, as he did aforetime.*

- Daniel finds out the law has been signed. He goes into HIS HOUSE.
- HIS WINDOWS ARE OPEN towards Jerusalem. He would pray 3 times a day. King David did the same thing.

**[33] Psalm 55:17** *Evening, and morning, and at noon, will I pray, and cry aloud: and he shall hear my voice.*

- Daniel would pray THREE TIMES per day in HIS HOUSE.
- That's what he normally did. He would get down on his knees and pray to God.
- Who else kneeled down and prayed to God in the Bible?

**[34] 1 Kings 8:54** *And it was so, that when Solomon had made an end of praying all this prayer and supplication unto the LORD, he arose from before the altar of the LORD, from kneeling on his knees with his hands spread up to heaven.*

- King Solomon got on his knees and prayed to God.

**[35] Ezra 9:5-6** *And at the evening sacrifice I arose up from my heaviness; and having rent my garment and my mantle, I fell upon my knees, and spread out my hands unto the LORD my God, 6 And said, O my God, I am ashamed and blush to lift up my face to thee, my God: for our iniquities are increased over our head, and our trespass is grown up unto the heavens.*

- Ezra got on his knees and prayed to God.

**[36] Psalm 95:6** *O come, let us worship and bow down: let us kneel before the LORD our maker.*

- King David says let us worship and bow down and KNEEL before the Lord OUR MAKER.

**[37] Luke 22:41-42** *And he was withdrawn from them about a stone's cast, and kneeled down, and prayed, 42 Saying, Father, if thou be willing, remove this cup from me: nevertheless not my will, but thine, be done.*

- Jesus Christ got on HIS KNEES and prayed to HIS FATHER.

**[38] Acts 7:59-60** *And they stoned Stephen, calling upon God, and saying, Lord Jesus, receive my spirit. 60 And he kneeled down, and cried with a loud voice, Lord, lay not this sin to their charge. And when he had said this, he fell asleep.*

- Stephen got on his knees when he was about to die and prayed to God.

**[39] Acts 9:40** *But Peter put them all forth, and kneeled down, and prayed; and turning him to the body said, Tabitha, arise. And she opened her eyes: and when she saw Peter, she sat up.*

- Peter got on his knees and prayed to God.

**[40] Acts 20:36-38** *And when he had thus spoken, he kneeled down, and prayed with them all. 37 And they all wept sore, and fell on Paul's neck, and kissed him, 38 Sorrowing most of all for the words which he spake, that they should see his face no more. And they accompanied him unto the ship.*

- Paul got on his knees and prayed to God.

So, do you think we might should do that too? Yeah, that's right.

- Do you think Daniel is going to allow a law to tell him that he can't get on his knees and pray to God?
- He didn't allow this new law to stop HIM from praying to God. He didn't care what the law said.
- So, don't ever let a GOVERNMENT LAW stop you from OBEYING GOD'S LAW.
- He was praying in HIS OWN HOUSE. He knew he was breaking this new law. Who cares?
- God's in charge. If I want to go to church and worship the one true God, I'll go to church and worship.

There will be a time in this country where our freedom to pray will be challenged.

- That slow process already started many years ago, and it will continue.
- In order to change something you have to do it slowly over time and it's easy. It works.
- That's how Satan works in this world. He slowly gets things to change and then people are fine with it.
- There was a law signed by King Darius telling people they couldn't pray for 30 days.
- DANIEL ignored that law. Are you going to be like Daniel?

He could have not prayed to God for 30 days. It was just 30 days!!! It wasn't forever.

- They'll only QUARANTINE US for a short period of time. Will you forget about God during this time?
- Don't let your freedom be taken away a little at a time. Daniel didn't.
- He got on his knees with the windows open. He wasn't fearful of someone seeing him pray.
- God doesn't say to go hide your light under a bushel.

**[41] Luke 11:33** *No man, when he hath lighted a candle, putteth it in a secret place, neither under a bushel, but on a candlestick, that they which come in may see the light.*

- God never says to go hide your faith. SHINE YOUR LIGHT. That's what Daniel was doing.
- People will see that. MANY WILL HATE YOU FOR IT.

**[42] Daniel 6:11-12** *Then these men assembled, and found Daniel praying and making supplication before his God. 12 Then they came near, and spake before the king concerning the king's decree; Hast thou not signed a decree, that every man that shall ask a petition of any God or man within thirty days, save of thee, O king, shall be cast into the den of lions? The king answered and said, The thing is true, according to the law of the Medes and Persians, which altereth not.*

- The men assemble purposely to see Daniel praying and making supplication before GOD.
- What did they do next? They immediately go to the King and tell him what Daniel did.
- "Didn't you sign a decree, O King, to throw any man into the Lion's Den that prays to another God?"
- The King says, "Yes, this is true and the law cannot be altered or changed."
- Daniel Chapter 6 is closely related to Daniel Chapter 3 with the fiery furnace.
- In Chapter 3, we see that Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego are supposed to bow down to a false god.
- In Chapter 6 today, we see that Daniel is not supposed to pray to HIS OWN GOD.
- Both are orders from the KING's and if you didn't follow them, death is the penalty.



But notice what we're going to see in both cases.

- There are EARTHLY KINGS and then there is THE HEAVENLY KING.
- The earthly king's can set their rules all they want. They can set the death penalty.
- But you better follow the rules of the HEEAVENLY KING always. His rules trump all rules.
- But yet, you get false preachers today saying you should ALWAYS follow ALL government rules.

***[43] Romans 13:1-2 Let every soul be subject unto the higher powers. For there is no power but of God: the powers that be are ordained of God. 2 Whosoever therefore resisteth the power, resisteth the ordinance of God: and they that resist shall receive to themselves damnation.***

- They like to take that SCRIPTURE right there and twist it all around.
- Read the next verses. Read the entire chapter. Read the entire Bible.
- When you take something and twist it, it won't match with the rest of the Bible.
- Interpreting that SCRIPTURE to say, "Do whatever the government tells you" doesn't match with Daniel.

What's that mean when that happens? That means you have it wrong.

- There's a HEAVENLY KING. If a rule here on earth conflicts with God's, which one will you follow?
- You better understand WHO THE KING IS!!!
- Daniel clearly understood the law and he chose to follow God's law instead. You do the same.
- Are you going to follow Daniel's example OR a false preacher's example.
- When it comes to laws that don't conflict with God's laws, then you should follow them.
- PAY YOUR TAXES. Don't drive over the speed limit. That doesn't go against God's rules.
- Telling someone you can't pray? That goes against God's law.
- Now, let's see what happens next in Daniel Chapter 6.

***[44] Daniel 6:13 Then answered they and said before the king, That Daniel, which is of the children of the captivity of Judah, regardeth not thee, O king, nor the decree that thou hast signed, but maketh his petition three times a day.***

- They tell on Daniel. "Daniel regards you not, O KING!!!"
- "And he didn't just do it once. He does it THREE TIMES per day."
- Do you know who else defied a direct order from a KING?

***[45] Exodus 1:17 But the midwives feared God, and did not as the king of Egypt commanded them, but saved the men children alive.***

- Why did they defy the king's command to kill all the baby boys? Because they feared God.
- But you have nurses today that will ABORT every baby boy and girl. That order comes from a doctor.
- That order comes from a boss. It doesn't even come from a king.
- If there were no doctors and nurses to perform abortions it wouldn't happen any more.
- But there are nurses still doing this BECAUSE NONE OF THEM FEAR GOD.
- They don't understand they are MURDERING CHILDREN.
- They have no regard for what the Bible says. They don't fear God.
- Daniel, though, FEARED GOD, and he didn't fear that King or any of those men.

**[46] Matthew 10:28 And fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell.**

- You have a choice today and every day. Will you fear MEN or GOD?
- God can destroy both your body and your soul. Men can just take your life. Nothing else.
- Daniel made his choice. And let's see what type of King this King Darius happens to be.
- Is he a good king or is he an evil king? Let's see. Was this King angry with Daniel?

**[47] Daniel 6:14 Then the king, when he heard these words, was sore displeased with himself, and set his heart on Daniel to deliver him: and he laboured till the going down of the sun to deliver him.**

- The KING was SORE DISPLEASED with HIMSELF. Not with Daniel. He was upset that he made that law.
- Why? Because he respected Daniel with all that he had. Does that tell you something about Daniel?
- What did the King do? "He set his heart on Daniel to deliver him from that law."
- He was trying to find a way out for Daniel so he didn't have to throw him in the lion's den.
- He worked all day long looking for any loop holes in that law. He wanted to save Daniel.
- Hey, that's not a bad king. He realizes he made a mistake.

**[48] Daniel 6:15 Then these men assembled unto the king, and said unto the king, Know, O king, that the law of the Medes and Persians is, That no decree nor statute which the king establisheth may be changed.**

- Those same evil men assemble themselves to the king once again.
- They hate Daniel so much that they want him dead. They're going to help murder Daniel.
- They say, "O KING you know that the decree cannot be changed. It stands."
- What they don't understand, though, is that Daniel has someone greater than this king helping him.

**[49] Daniel 6:16 Then the king commanded, and they brought Daniel, and cast him into the den of lions. Now the king spake and said unto Daniel, Thy God whom thou servest continually, he will deliver thee.**

- The king kept his law. They cast Daniel into the lion's den.
- But notice what the king says, "Thy God whom you serve continually will save you, Daniel."
- Do you think Daniel was trusting in God? Of course he was.

**[50] Psalm 37:39-40 But the salvation of the righteous is of the LORD: he is their strength in the time of trouble. 40 And the LORD shall help them, and deliver them: he shall deliver them from the wicked, and save them, because they trust in him.**

- If you ever have a life or death situation for God, remember Daniel. Trust in God.
- THE LORD SHALL HELP THEM AND DELIVER THEM. He is your strength in time of trouble.
- He'll save you if you trust in HIM. That's it. TRUST IN HIM.

**[51] Daniel 6:17 And a stone was brought, and laid upon the mouth of the den; and the king sealed it with his own signet, and with the signet of his lords; that the purpose might not be changed concerning Daniel.**

- Daniel was sealed into that lion's den. He wasn't getting out. The king couldn't change his mind.

**[52] Daniel 6:18 Then the king went to his palace, and passed the night fasting: neither were instruments of musick brought before him: and his sleep went from him.**

- The king was so troubled that he didn't eat, and he didn't sleep.
- He cared about Daniel and he knew he was tricked into that law.
- There's a lesson in that too. Don't be tricked into making decisions by evil people.
- They always have some other motive that's hidden. They have a hidden agenda. Be careful.

**[53] Daniel 6:19 Then the king arose very early in the morning, and went in haste unto the den of lions.**

- He gets up and hurries to the den of lions. He wants to check on Daniel.

**[54] Daniel 6:20 And when he came to the den, he cried with a lamentable voice unto Daniel: and the king spake and said to Daniel, O Daniel, servant of the living God, is thy God, whom thou servest continually, able to deliver thee from the lions?**

- He is sorrowful for what happened. He says, "O DANIEL, servant of the LIVING GOD!!!"
- Did Daniel continuously serve God? Yeah, King Darius has said so multiple times already.
- Can God deliver you from the lions? He asks that question.
- Then there's silence. Will Daniel answer? Let's see.

**[55] Daniel 6:21 Then said Daniel unto the king, O king, live for ever.**

- Can you imagine that? When your dear friend speaks out of the lion's den.
- You can see how much King Darius loves Daniel. Daniel speaks, "O KING LIVE FOREVER."
- Daniel had respect for King Darius. He treated him like the King. He didn't disrespect the king.
- But when it comes down to doing what God says or what Darius says, Daniel chooses God.

**[56] Daniel 6:22 My God hath sent his angel, and hath shut the lions' mouths, that they have not hurt me: forasmuch as before him innocency was found in me; and also before thee, O king, have I done no hurt.**

- Daniel lets the king know that he hasn't done him any hurt by not following that law.
- He didn't follow the law and didn't hurt anyone. Understand that today.

Daniel says, "MY GOD HATH SENT HIS ANGEL." An angel was sent to save Daniel.

- That could have been Jesus Christ. We don't know for sure. JESUS IS THE ANGEL OF THE LORD.
- It could have been another angel, but my guess is JESUS CHRIST.
- He shut the mouths of the lions. "Before the angel of the Lord, INNOCENCY WAS FOUND IN ME."
- Do you think Daniel was perfect and sinless? No, the Bible says no man is sinless.
- So how do you think Daniel was innocent? THROUGH FAITH. Daniel's faith made him righteous.
- How do we know faith saved Daniel right there? Hebrews Chapter 11 verse 32.

**[57] Hebrews 11:32-33 And what shall I more say? for the time would fail me to tell of Gedeon, and of Barak, and of Samson, and of Jephthae; of David also, and Samuel, and of the prophets: 33 Who through faith subdued kingdoms, wrought righteousness, obtained promises, stopped the mouths of lions,**

- Daniel is one of the prophets "Who through FAITH subdued kingdoms, wrought righteousness, obtained promises, STOPPED THE MOUTHS OF LIONS."
- That's talking about Daniel. He stopped the mouths of lions through FAITH.
- But Samson slew a lion. David slew a lion. But Daniel stopped the lion's mouths THROUGH faith.
- That faith he had led to the angel of the Lord shutting the mouths of those lions.

Some people might say that it was Daniel's works that saved him that day.

- You have to watch out for those false preachers.
- They'll say, "See, Daniel was innocent and his works saved him."
- Well, Hebrews Chapter 11 says different, but Daniel Chapter 6 says the same.
- Look what the next verse says. False preachers need to read the whole BIBLE.

***[58] Daniel 6:23 Then was the king exceeding glad for him, and commanded that they should take Daniel up out of the den. So Daniel was taken up out of the den, and no manner of hurt was found upon him, because he believed in his God.***

- King Darius is VERY HAPPY. He commands that they get Daniel up out of that lion's den.
- NO HURT AT ALL was found on David. Just like with Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. No hurt.
- Why? It says right there at the end, "BECAUSE HE BELIEVED IN HIS GOD."
- Was it because of his great works? Was it because he continuously served his God?
- No, it's because HE BELIEVED IN HIS GOD to save him. You do that and God saves you.
- This is SALVATION. Believe in God to save you, and He says He will. Do you trust that?

***[59] 1 Chronicles 5:20 And they were helped against them, and the Hagarites were delivered into their hand, and all that were with them: for they cried to God in the battle, and he was intreated of them; because they put their trust in him.***

- Put your trust in God, and He saves you.

***[60] 2 Chronicles 20:20 And they rose early in the morning, and went forth into the wilderness of Tekoa: and as they went forth, Jehoshaphat stood and said, Hear me, O Judah, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem; Believe in the LORD your God, so shall ye be established; believe his prophets, so shall ye prosper.***

- Believe in the Lord your God so shall ye BE ESTABLISHED.

***[61] Psalm 37:40 And the LORD shall help them, and deliver them: he shall deliver them from the wicked, and save them, because they trust in him.***

***[62] Psalm 118:8 It is better to trust in the LORD than to put confidence in man.***

***[63] Psalm 118:9 It is better to trust in the LORD than to put confidence in princes.***

***[64] Psalm 146:3 Put not your trust in princes, nor in the son of man, in whom there is no help.***

***[65] Isaiah 26:3 Thou wilt keep him in perfect peace, whose mind is stayed on thee: because he trusteth in thee.***

- That is salvation. That's the only requirement to be saved. TRUST IN GOD. It's that simple.
- No, you don't have to go do all these GREAT WORKS to be saved.
- You can't do any good works the Bible says UNTIL you're saved through FAITH ALONE.
- Let's see what happens next in Daniel Chapter 6.

***[66] Daniel 6:24 And the king commanded, and they brought those men which had accused Daniel, and they cast them into the den of lions, them, their children, and their wives; and the lions had the mastery of them, and brake all their bones in pieces or ever they came at the bottom of the den.***

- So, do you what happens to evil and wicked people when the angel of the Lord shows up?
- King Darius figured out what happened very quickly. He wasn't dumb.
- Those men didn't just die in that lion's den. Their children were thrown in there.
- Their wives were thrown in there too. The lion's broke their bones into pieces.
- Those evil men were to blame for that. What you do can and will affect your family. Remember that.

Men, women, and children are destroyed by God all throughout the Bible.

- Some false preachers say God would never do that. Happens all the time in the Bible. Read it.
- I would give you all the Scripture for that, but we've went over that many times.
- We have to move on in Daniel Chapter 6 for now verse 25.

***[67] Daniel 6:25 Then king Darius wrote unto all people, nations, and languages, that dwell in all the earth; Peace be multiplied unto you.***

- Now the King is going to write something else. This is the best part.
- This is to ALL PEOPLE, ALL NATIONS, ALL LANGUAGES that dwell upon the earth.
- This King witnessed a great miracle, and he's got something to say now.

***[68] Daniel 6:26 I make a decree, That in every dominion of my kingdom men tremble and fear before the God of Daniel: for he is the living God, and stedfast for ever, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed, and his dominion shall be even unto the end.***

- Isn't that great to see when a man wakes up? King Darius woke up.
- "The GOD OF DANIEL IS THE LIVING GOD!!! His kingdom shall not be destroyed FOREVER."
- King Darius woke up a little faster than King Nebuchadnezzar.

***[69] Daniel 6:27 He delivereth and rescueth, and he worketh signs and wonders in heaven and in earth, who hath delivered Daniel from the power of the lions.***

- God delivers and rescues. He does signs and wonders in heaven and in earth.
- The anti-Christ will do signs and wonders on earth but not in heaven.
- ONLY THE LIVING GOD could deliver Daniel from the lions that day.

***[70] Daniel 6:28 So this Daniel prospered in the reign of Darius, and in the reign of Cyrus the Persian.***

- No matter what Daniel did, he prospered. And it wasn't money prosperity preaching.

- Daniel turned down money and riches in the last chapter.
- Do you really think that's what the Bible means? Prospering in the Bible is not all about money.
- He prospered because God was with Him in everything. He obeyed God and did what He asked.
- God sees all. God hears all. He knows if and when you're trusting in Him.
- Right now, as we pray, you need to let God know you TRUST IN HIM. He will deliver you.

Let's pray.

## SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 7

[2] The title of the sermon today is “DANIEL CHAPTER 7.”

- We’ve went verse by verse through Daniel Chapter 1 through 6.
- We’re going to continue that right now with Daniel Chapter 7.
- Remember, the Book of the Daniel is the last book of the MAJOR PROPHETS.
- You have Isaiah, Jeremiah, Lamentations, Ezekiel, and Daniel

If you remember, the Book of Daniel is in chronological order from Chapter 1 through 6.

- Then, when we get to Chapter 7, you’ll see that we go back in time.
- In Chapter 1, we Daniel, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego taken into captivity in BABYLON.
- They prosper in whatever they do. The king sees them as the best of any of the children.
- In Chapter 2, Daniel tells King Nebuchadnezzar his dream and the interpretation.
- Daniel is made a great ruler in the kingdom of BABYLON.

In Chapter 3, we see King Nebuchadnezzar make this great image for worship.

- Shadrach Meshach, and Abednego won’t bow down and worship and are thrown into the furnace.
- The SON OF GOD is seen in the furnace with them. They aren’t hurt at all.
- In Chapter 4, King Nebuchadnezzar finds GOD. He loses power and lives with the beasts for years.
- After that experience, King Nebuchadnezzar confesses GOD ALMIGHTY.
- In Chapter 5, we see King Belshazzar of BABYLON having a great feast.
- He sees a hand writing on the wall. Daniel interprets this for him. King Belshazzar dies that night.
- The Kingdom of Babylon is overthrown by the Medes and the Persians.

In Chapter 6, Daniel is made the chief of all the Presidents in the MEDIAN kingdom.

- King Darius respects Daniel, but he’s tricked into making a law against praying to God.
- Daniel prays anyway. The King is forced to throw Daniel into the lion’s den.
- God saves Daniel. The King is very happy about Daniel being saved.
- The accusers of Daniel are thrown into the lion’s den with their families and they are devoured.
- Then we see this new DECREE FROM KING DARIUS at the end of Daniel Chapter 6.

***[3] Daniel 6:26-27 I make a decree, That in every dominion of my kingdom men tremble and fear before the God of Daniel: for he is the living God, and stedfast for ever, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed, and his dominion shall be even unto the end. 27 He delivereth and rescueth, and he worketh signs and wonders in heaven and in earth, who hath delivered Daniel from the power of the lions.***

- Chapters 1 through 6 are in perfect chronological order. Daniel always prospers.
- It doesn’t matter who the King is or what he does, God is with him and leading his way.
- Let’s start in verse 1 of Daniel Chapter 7.

***[4] Daniel 7:1 In the first year of Belshazzar king of Babylon Daniel had a dream and visions of his head upon his bed: then he wrote the dream, and told the sum of the matters.***

- So, we saw King Belshazzar in Daniel Chapter 5.



- The kings that we see in order in Daniel are Nebuchadnezzar, Belshazzar, and Darius.
- So, we go back in time to when Belshazzar was reigning in BABYLON.
- This was before KING DARIUS and the MEDES conquered BABYLON.
- In the very first year of BELSHAZZAR reigning in Babylon, Daniel has a dream.
- In Chapter 7, Daniel is going to tell us all about this dream.

So, when you're reading through the Book of Daniel, you'll notice a few things:

- Chapters 1 through 6 aren't very difficult to understand.
- Those things already happened. When you hit chapter 7, though, you'll see it gets tougher.
- Why? Chapters 7 through 12 are going to be PROPHECY from Daniel.
- He's not telling us about things that already happened at that time.
- He's going to be telling us about things that are going to happen in the future.

When things haven't already happened, they're more difficult to understand.

- If we know what already happened, it's easier to understand.
- The Old Testament prophecies about Jesus would be hard to understand BEFORE He came.
- Now that He came to earth, died on the Cross, and arose from the dead, it's easier to understand.
- Plus, we have the entire New Testament teaching us about why Jesus came.

So, Daniel Chapters 7 through 12 are more difficult BUT we have the New Testament to help us.

- We also have the indwelling of the Holy Spirit to guide us and teach us.
- So we go back in time when we hit Chapter 7, but Chapters 7 through 12 will be in order once again.
- And we see in verse 1 of Daniel Chapter 7 that Daniel writes the dream down and tells us about it.

***[5] Daniel 7:2 Daniel spake and said, I saw in my vision by night, and, behold, the four winds of the heaven strove upon the great sea.***

- We see the four winds of the heaven striving upon the great sea.
- The four winds simply means they're coming from all directions.
- The phrase 4 winds is found in the Bible 9 times. Here's a couple of those.

***[6] Zechariah 2:6 Ho, ho, come forth, and flee from the land of the north, saith the LORD: for I have spread you abroad as the four winds of the heaven, saith the LORD.***

***[7] Mark 13:27 And then shall he send his angels, and shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from the uttermost part of the earth to the uttermost part of heaven.***

- So, there 4 winds from heaven strive upon the great sea. This is the beginning of Daniel's dream.

***[8] Daniel 7:3 And four great beasts came up from the sea, diverse one from another.***

- Now, we're going to see the FOUR GREAT BEASTS come up from the sea. All 4 beasts are different.
- If you remember from past sermons on the Book of Daniel, Chapters 2 and 7 go together.
- Chapters 3 and 6 are similar. Chapters 4 and 5 are similar. We see 4 beasts in Chapter 7 here.
- Do you remember the great image in Daniel Chapter 2? There were 4 sections of this great image.

King Nebuchadnezzar was the head of gold. The Babylonians were at the top of this great image.

- The second part of the image was the breast and arms of silver. This was the Medes and the Persians.
- And remember Daniel is prophesying these things BEFORE they actually happened.
- The third part of the image is the belly and thighs of brass. This represented GREECE.
- The last or fourth part of the image is legs or iron, feet part iron and part clay.
- The ROMANS aren't mentioned by name, but we now know the ROMANS conquered GREECE.
- And the ROMANS were the empire in power when Jesus Christ came to earth the first time.
- With that GREAT IMAGE in mind and those 4 kingdoms, let's continue in Daniel Chapter 7.
- Remember, Daniel is now going to tell us about the 4 BEASTS coming up from the sea.

**[9] Daniel 7:4 The first was like a lion, and had eagle's wings: I beheld till the wings thereof were plucked, and it was lifted up from the earth, and made stand upon the feet as a man, and a man's heart was given to it.**

- This first beast is like a lion with eagle's wings. That's powerful.

**[10] Proverbs 30:29-31 There be three things which go well, yea, four are comely in going: 30 A lion which is strongest among beasts, and turneth not away for any; 31 A greyhound; an he goat also; and a king, against whom there is no rising up.**

- A lion is the strongest among beasts. A lion doesn't turn away from ANY other beast.
- What about the eagle? Did you know MOSES prophesies about BABYLON in Deuteronomy?
- He says, "If you all forget about the LORD, and you won't listen to his voice and do what He asks:"

**[11] Deuteronomy 28:49 The LORD shall bring a nation against thee from far, from the end of the earth, as swift as the eagle flieth; a nation whose tongue thou shalt not understand;**

- So BABYLON is described as an eagle here. LIKE A POWERFUL LION who fears no one and a SWIFT EAGLE.
- King Nebuchadnezzar represents the KINGDOM OF BABYLON as this first BEAST. Let's read verse 4 again.

**[12] Daniel 7:4 The first was like a lion, and had eagle's wings: I beheld till the wings thereof were plucked, and it was lifted up from the earth, and made stand upon the feet as a man, and a man's heart was given to it.**

- The eagles wings were plucked. This mighty eagle above the entire kingdom loses it's wings.
- It's no longer HIGH ABOVE the Kingdom of Babylon any more.
- Do you remember when God took away all of King Nebuchadnezzar's power?
- That was plucking HIS WINGS. God gave him a different heart like a beast. He lived with the beasts.
- But then God lifted him up from the earth, made him stand up like a man, and gave him a man's heart.

**[13] Daniel 7:5 And behold another beast, a second, like to a bear, and it raised up itself on one side, and it had three ribs in the mouth of it between the teeth of it: and they said thus unto it, Arise, devour much flesh.**

- The second beast is a BEAR that represents the Medes and Persians.
- The bear raised itself up on one side. THE PERSIANS WERE RAISED UP AND MORE POWERFUL.
- The 3 ribs represent 3 FUTURE PERSIAN kings after DARIUS THE MEDIAN and after King Cyrus of Persia.
- We'll talk about those 3 FUTURE PERSIAN KINGS in Daniel Chapter 10 and 11.
- But they are the 3 after King Cyrus of Persia. Ezra, Nehemiah, and Esther gives us their names.

- Artaxerxes, Darius, and Ahasuerus are the 3 kings of Persia this is talking about.

Do you remember King Darius the MEDIAN from Daniel Chapter 6? He wasn't King Darius the Persian.

- After King Darius, there are many PERSIAN KINGS: Cyrus, Artaxerxes, Darius, and Ahasuerus.
- The THREE RIBS in the mouth of the bear tell it to DEVOUR MUCH FLESH.
- And then after Darius of Persia, you see the richest of them all: King Ahasuerus. He's in ESTHER.

Also, in Daniel Chapter 8, we'll see the Medes and Persians described like a RAM with horns.

- And one horn is raised up higher than the other.
- The PERSIANS are raised up higher than the MEDES. Same thing with this bear on one side being higher.

***[14] Daniel 8:3 Then I lifted up mine eyes, and saw, and, behold, there stood before the river a ram which had two horns: and the two horns were high; but one was higher than the other, and the higher came up last.***

- This says the HIGHER horn came up last.
- When we read the Book of Daniel we see the Darius the Mede as the first ruler.
- THEN, we see the Persians ruling. So that makes sense with the higher horn growing up last.
- So, you see these BEASTS are flesh eating animals. A lion was first with eagle wings.
- Then we see a bear. What do we see next?

***[15] Daniel 7:6 After this I beheld, and lo another, like a leopard, which had upon the back of it four wings of a fowl; the beast had also four heads; and dominion was given to it.***

- The third beast is like a leopard with four wings of a fowl and the beast has four heads.
- This represents the kingdom of GREECE and its rulers. The first was Alexander of Macedon.
- If you study this man, he was like a leopard with wings.
- A leopard isn't like a HUGE and POWERFUL lion. His rule began on a smaller level.
- But he leopard is cruel and swift. That was just like the beginning of the GRECIAN EMPIRE.
- After the death of Alexander of Macedon, the kingdom was split into four.
- That matches Daniel 7 verse 6 perfectly. Four of his generals became four governors.

***[16] Daniel 7:7 After this I saw in the night visions, and behold a fourth beast, dreadful and terrible, and strong exceedingly; and it had great iron teeth: it devoured and brake in pieces, and stamped the residue with the feet of it: and it was diverse from all the beasts that were before it; and it had ten horns.***

- Now, we see this FOURTH AND GREAT BEAST. It's dreadful and terrible.
- If you were alone without any weapons, would you rather come up against a lion, a bear, or a leopard?
- It really doesn't matter which one BECAUSE you'll need God to defeat any one of those.
- BUT THIS BEAST is different from all three of those. It's dreadful and terrible and exceeding STRONG!!!
- This is the ROMAN EMPIRE. "It had great iron teeth" verse 7 says right there.

In Daniel Chapter 2, the legs of the great image are made of iron.

- The Romans conquered with power and fear. They truly did strike TERROR among all the nations.
- They would cause a panic, then kill, rob, and turn everything into waste.
- The ten horns mentioned at the end of verse 7 there are ten kings. We'll learn that later in this chapter.
- The ten horns are like the ten toes on the feet of that great image.

***[17] Daniel 7:8 I considered the horns, and, behold, there came up among them another little horn, before whom there were three of the first horns plucked up by the roots: and, behold, in this horn were eyes like the eyes of man, and a mouth speaking great things.***

- So, please keep in mind that prophecies in the Bible have DUAL FULFILLMENT.
- This happened previously, but it also applies to the end of the world.
- You have this little horn or ruler that rises up. This is talking about a man who speaks great things.
- As an example, this could have been the ruler of the ROMAN CATHOLIC CHURCH.
- Remember, the ROMANS are the FOURTH KINGDOM, the FOURTH BEAST in Daniel's prophecy.

The POPE of the Roman Catholic Church speaks GREAT THINGS. He speaks GREAT BLASPHEMIES.

- He says he has power in heaven and earth. He is infallible. He never does anything wrong.
- He doesn't mess up. He can forgive sin. He can grant indulgences.
- He makes new laws whenever he wants. You can only eat fish on Friday during lent.
- You can't eat meat on Friday, but fish is okay. Fish isn't meat? It sure is meat. SCIENCE SAYS SO.
- It's obvious. But the Pope said it just can't be warm-blooded flesh meat. Oh, okay.
- The POPE can change any of the laws in the BIBLE. That's called "SPEAKING GREAT THINGS."
- When you say something different than God, that's BLASPHEMY. The Pope = BLASPHEMY.
- I'm not saying for sure that is talking about the Pope, but it matches pretty well as an example.

So, there was an immediate application BUT there's a future application of this prophecy and FOUR BEASTS.

- The little horn that is coming up on this fourth beast is going to be the ANTI-CHRIST.
- The 4<sup>th</sup> beast is this great world-wide KINGDOM with rulers who give their power to the ANTI-CHRIST.
- This matches perfectly with Revelation Chapter 13.

***[18] Revelation 13:1-3 And I stood upon the sand of the sea, and saw a beast rise up out of the sea, having seven heads and ten horns, and upon his horns ten crowns, and upon his heads the name of blasphemy. 2 And the beast which I saw was like unto a leopard, and his feet were as the feet of a bear, and his mouth as the mouth of a lion: and the dragon gave him his power, and his seat, and great authority. 3 And I saw one of his heads as it were wounded to death; and his deadly wound was healed: and all the world wondered after the beast.***

- So, from our Revelation verse by verse studying, we know the BEAST is the ANTI-CHRIST.
- A BEAST rises up out of the sea just like we're seeing Daniel Chapter 7.
- In Revelation 13, you'll see that the ANTI-CHRIST speaks great things just like we see in Daniel Chapter 7.
- Notice the beast HERE is like a leopard, a bear, and a lion. All of them combined.
- The first beast in Daniel Chapter 7 was a lion, the second was a bear, and the third was a leopard.
- Do you see how it's obvious these go together? Revelation and Daniel go hand in hand with each other.
- The last great kingdom will be like all of these BEASTS and previous kingdom's combined.
- Daniel's prophecy of this last GREAT BEAST is the ANTI-CHRIST'S kingdom that he will take over.
- So, remember, Daniel Chapter 7 is Daniel telling us about his dream that he had.

***[19] Daniel 7:9 I beheld till the thrones were cast down, and the Ancient of days did sit, whose garment was white as snow, and the hair of his head like the pure wool: his throne was like the fiery flame, and his wheels as burning fire.***

- Daniel watched until the thrones of these leaders were cast down.
- He sees the ANCIENT OF DAYS who is God sitting on a fiery throne.
- This is the only CHAPTER in the Bible that calls God the ANCIENT OF DAYS.
- His garment is white as snow. His hair is like PURE WOOL.
- At the end of verse 9, it says his wheels as burning fire.
- In the Book of Ezekiel, you can read about the wheel with fire between them.

***[20] Daniel 7:10 A fiery stream issued and came forth from before him: thousand thousands ministered unto him, and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him: the judgment was set, and the books were opened.***

- A thousand thousands is 1,000 x 1,000 or a 1 with 6 zeros is ONE MILLION minister to God.
- 10,000 times 10,000 stand before him. That's a 1 with 8 zeros or ONE HUNDRED MILLION before GOD.
- THE JUDGEMENT WAS SET and the BOOKS OPENED. When the judgement comes, the BOOKS are used.
- If you remember, we talked about this in our Revelation studies.

***[21] Revelation 20:11 And I saw a great white throne, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them.***

- We see that all of the KINGS are defeated. God sits on His throne and is the judge.
- But look, God isn't judging the SAVED people when He opens HIS BOOKS to JUDGE in the end.
- Revelation tells us who God is going to judge at this GREAT WHITE THRONE judgement.

***[22] Revelation 20:12-13 And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works. 13 And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works.***

- THE DEAD ARE JUDGED at this great white throne judgement. Not the living.
- Not the ones with everlasting LIFE. The dead were in death and hell it says.
- Those are the ones who are going to be judged according to their works.
- So, is there different levels of hell? Yes, the Bible says so. That's why God is judging the dead.
- They're already going to hell. He gets out HIS BOOKS and judges them according to their works.
- EVERY PERSON who doesn't accept Jesus Christ as their ONLY SAVIOR will be judged by their works.

Some people think they're good people. "Yeah, I have to be good to get to heaven."

- No, if you think it depends on how good you are, the Bible says you will go to hell.
- Why? Because we aren't good. That's right. I'm not good. You're not good. Jesus says so.
- We all sin and we all mess up every single day. If you're judged by your works, to hell you will go.

***[23] Revelation 20:14-15 And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. 15 And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.***

- The book of LIFE will be used at this judgement. If your name isn't in there, you're sent to hell.

- If your name is in the BOOK OF LIFE, that means you've believed on the Lord Jesus Christ.

***[24] Daniel 7:11 I beheld then because of the voice of the great words which the horn spake: I beheld even till the beast was slain, and his body destroyed, and given to the burning flame.***

- The beast is the ANTI-CHRIST who speaks great words against God.
- Daniel watched in his dream until the beast was slain and his body destroyed.
- We see when the BEAST is cast into the burning flame in the Book of Revelation.

***[25] Revelation 19:20 And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone.***

- So, keep in mind, that we use the Book of Revelation which is much clearer than Daniel.
- We see how they're related, but God gave us REVELATION to reveal things to us.
- The order of events in Daniel Chapter 7 doesn't appear to be in exact chronological order.
- Daniel is simply telling us his dream and the things he remembers.
- In Revelation, though, we see the events in perfect chronological order.

***[26] Daniel 7:12 As concerning the rest of the beasts, they had their dominion taken away: yet their lives were prolonged for a season and time.***

- So, we know that the other beasts all lost their dominion and power. It was taken away by God.

***[27] Daniel 7:13 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him.***

- Now we see JESUS who is the SON OF MAN coming with the clouds of heaven.
- He comes over to the ANCIENT OF DAYS. So we now know that the ANCIENT OF DAYS is God the Father.
- This is more proof that Jesus and God the Father aren't the same person.
- Jesus comes in the clouds and comes TO the Ancient of Days.
- I want you to remember, though, what the ANCIENT OF DAYS looked like in Daniel 7 verse 9.

He had a garment on as white as snow. His hair was like pure wool. His throne was like the fiery flame.

- Notice that it doesn't tell us about HIS FACE. In Exodus 33, we see that no man can see HIS FACE and live.
- But we also see what JESUS looks like in the Book of Revelation.

***[28] Revelation 1:14 His head and his hairs were white like wool, as white as snow; and his eyes were as a flame of fire;***

- So, the ANCIENT OF DAYS is not Jesus Christ right there but it does describe God in every way.
- GOD IS FROM EVERLASTING TO EVERLASTING. He is the ANCIENT OF DAYS. From forever.

***[29] Hebrews 1:3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high;***



- Jesus is the EXPRESS IMAGE of HIS FATHER. That means He looks like HIS FATHER. They aren't the same.

**[30] Daniel 7:14** *And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.*

- JESUS comes back in the end of the world to PHYSICALLY take HIS KINGDOM.
- Not everyone is destroyed in the end of the world.
- The people who are in the BATTLE OF ARMAGEDDON will be destroyed.
- But Jesus will rule and reign for 1,000 years on earth and it's not just SAVED PEOPLE there.
- There are others there on EARTH. JESUS CHRIST will be the KING over HIS KINGDOM.
- And He will rule with a ROD OF IRON. That's why it's good to know the LAW in the Bible.

**[31] Revelation 19:15** *And out of his mouth goeth a sharp sword, that with it he should smite the nations: and he shall rule them with a rod of iron: and he treadeth the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God.*

- If you want to know what LAWS Jesus will use to rule the Kingdom, read the Bible.
- He will enforce those laws in HIS KINGDOM.

**[32] Exodus 21:12** *He that smiteth a man, so that he die, shall be surely put to death.*

- Murderers will be put to death. You won't be able to lie your way out in front of a human judge and jury.
- Jesus will already know, and the murderers will be put to death AS AN EXAMPLE.

**[33] Daniel 7:15** *I Daniel was grieved in my spirit in the midst of my body, and the visions of my head troubled me.*

- These visions Daniel receives are troubling him. He is grieving because he doesn't understand them.
- When you read the Bible and you can't understand something, it should bother you.
- The Book of Daniel troubles me in chapters 7 through 12. When it does that, we need to study more.
- I say, "God, please help me to figure this out. It's bothering me."
- He'll come through when He wants you to know.

**[34] Daniel 7:16** *I came near unto one of them that stood by, and asked him the truth of all this. So he told me, and made me know the interpretation of the things.*

- Daniel goes over to the one of the SAINTS standing by. Remember, there were millions around the throne.
- Daniel asks one to explain these visions to him. He tells Daniel and now Daniel will tell us.

**[35] Daniel 7:17-18** *These great beasts, which are four, are four kings, which shall arise out of the earth. 18 But the saints of the most High shall take the kingdom, and possess the kingdom for ever, even for ever and ever.*

- These FOUR KINGS that arise won't rule forever. THE SAINTS of God are the sanctified.



- The sanctified are the SAVED people who have trusted on the Lord Jesus Christ.
- When Jesus Christ comes to rule and reign, the SAINTS will rule and reign with Jesus.

***[36] Revelation 20:6 Blessed and holy is he that hath part in the first resurrection: on such the second death hath no power, but they shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years.***

- So, we know we'll rule and reign over the KINGDOM with Jesus Christ for 1,000 years.
- After the 1,000 years, though, the rule and reign will continue with GOD ALMIGHTY forever.
- The KINGDOM of Jesus Christ doesn't go away. He delivers the Kingdom to the FATHER.
- But Jesus continues to rule and reign in the KINGDOM OF GOD forever.
- Daniel 7:14 even says that the dominion of Jesus Christ is an EVERLASTING dominion or rule.

***[37] Daniel 7:19-20 Then I would know the truth of the fourth beast, which was diverse from all the others, exceeding dreadful, whose teeth were of iron, and his nails of brass; which devoured, brake in pieces, and stamped the residue with his feet; 20 And of the ten horns that were in his head, and of the other which came up, and before whom three fell; even of that horn that had eyes, and a mouth that spake very great things, whose look was more stout than his fellows.***

- We know the fourth beast is like ROME, but it's just a picture of what this last beast will be like.
- The fourth beast is diverse from all the others and EXCEEDING DREADFUL.
- So, this is repeating what we talked about earlier. The beasts teeth are like iron, nails of brass.
- It breaks everything else in pieces and rules over everything else. Like ROME did.
- The 10 horns are 10 rulers. Horns are a picture of strength and power.
- For example, in a horned animal, the strength of that animal is in its horns.

As an example, the horn starts out very small and then it grows and becomes powerful.

- All of these state governors are an example. They didn't really exercise their power until the virus hit.
- Now, they're showing they have POWER. And people just blindly do what they say.
- They're growing in power. And they'll continue to grow in power as long as people do what they say.
- Their mouths speak great things. The ANTI-CHRIST will speak VERY GREAT THINGS verse 20 says.
- He's going to be more stout and more powerful than all the others.
- That means we haven't seen a ruler like the ANTI-CHRIST. We'll know when he's here.
- When the ANTI-CHRIST says, "You MUST stay at home." You'll know when you don't do what he says.
- Remember King Nebuchadnezzar? He is the first picture of the ANTI-CHRIST in Daniel.

***[38] Daniel 2:5 The king answered and said to the Chaldeans, The thing is gone from me: if ye will not make known unto me the dream, with the interpretation thereof, ye shall be cut in pieces, and your houses shall be made a dunghill.***

- The ANTI-CHRIST will imitate Jesus Christ, do miracles, and speak very great things.

***[39] Daniel 7:21 I beheld, and the same horn made war with the saints, and prevailed against them;***

- He's going to make war with the SAINTS. He's going to win that war with the SAINTS.
- He's going to kill the saints or the saved people.

**[40] Revelation 13:5-7** *And there was given unto him a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies; and power was given unto him to continue forty and two months. 6 And he opened his mouth in blasphemy against God, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle, and them that dwell in heaven. 7 And it was given unto him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them: and power was given him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations.*

- So, I hope you're seeing how Daniel and Revelation are matching perfectly.
- The ANTI-CHRIST is described here in Daniel and Revelation. They match.

**[41] Daniel 7:22** *Until the Ancient of days came, and judgment was given to the saints of the most High; and the time came that the saints possessed the kingdom.*

- The ANTI-CHRIST prevails against the SAINTS until God comes.
- We'll NEVER rule and reign here on earth until all the evil and darkness UNTIL God comes and conquers.
- When all of the judgements and wrath of God is over, then Jesus rules and reigns on EARTH.
- That's when the SAINTS possess the kingdom. It's only when Jesus takes it and allows us to possess it.

Why does it say until the ANCIENT OF DAYS came? We know JESUS comes in the clouds.

- We know the Ancient of Days is describing GOD THE FATHER.
- But we know God the Father doesn't come in the clouds.
- Jesus comes to God the Father after the Rapture with all the saints.
- Ancient of Days is an attribute that describes the Father, Son, and the Holy Spirit.

You can call any of those the ANCIENT OF DAYS. Why? Because all are eternal.

- My Father and I share a common name. Our last name is the same. We share names.
- We're both dads. We're both men. We're both getting old. We aren't ancient.
- Ancient of days is a shared attribute for the Father and the Son as shown here in Daniel Chapter 7.
- The NAME JESUS, though, is ONLY FOR THE SON. The Bible never says the Father's name is JESUS.
- Do you remember the sermon when we went through JESUS and all HIS names?
- God the Father and Jesus are referred to as the ANCIENT OF DAYS
- But God the Father is never called JESUS. Ever. Not once. That's a man-made fairy tale. Not in the Bible.

**[42] Daniel 7:23** *Thus he said, The fourth beast shall be the fourth kingdom upon earth, which shall be diverse from all kingdoms, and shall devour the whole earth, and shall tread it down, and break it in pieces.*

- That's what this so-called great leader is going to do.
- People will think he's amazing and great, but he doesn't care about them. He's evil. His leader is SATAN.
- He's working for that great dragon, that old serpent, the DEVIL.
- He's going to devour the whole earth, tread it down, and break it in pieces.

**[43] Daniel 7:24** *And the ten horns out of this kingdom are ten kings that shall arise: and another shall rise after them; and he shall be diverse from the first, and he shall subdue three kings.*

- Ten kings arise. Another rises after those 10 kings. The ANTI-CHRIST is different from all the first kings.
- The ANTI-CHRIST will SUBDUE 3 of the kings. Three of these kings must give him some resistance.
- And he puts them down. It says that he will subdue three of those kings.

- They will give their power to the ANTI-CHRIST.

**[44] Daniel 7:25** *And he shall speak great words against the most High, and shall wear out the saints of the most High, and think to change times and laws: and they shall be given into his hand until a time and times and the dividing of time.*

- We know the ANTI-CHRIST takes power in the middle of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week or 7-year period.
- That's when the little horn starts to grow and become powerful.
- The seals are the anti-Christ making war with the world and then he switches to just the saints.
- That period is when the ANTI-CHRIST is coming to power but it takes 3-1/2 years to get there.
- He gets a deadly wound, comes back to life, and take power in his new kingdom.
- Then, he rules for a period of 42 months or 3-1/2 years. Time, Times, and dividing of time = 3-1/2 years.
- One time equals one year, times equals two years, and dividing of time is a half year. This is 3-1/2 years.

This matches Revelation perfectly. He's there for the entire 7 years.

- For the first half of the 7 years or first 3.5 years, he is coming to power and persecutes the SAINTS.
- Then the great tribulation occurs and he's killing the saints. The RAPTURE happens.
- The saints are taken to heaven. The beast is in power at that time and reigns for the rest of the 7 years.

**[45] Daniel 7:26** *But the judgment shall sit, and they shall take away his dominion, to consume and to destroy it unto the end.*

- After the RAPTURE, the wrath of God or the trumpet judgements begin.
- God's wrath begins to take away the ANTI-CHRIST'S dominion. It's slowly consuming him.
- God is slowly destroying him until the end of those 7 years.

**[46] Daniel 7:27** *And the kingdom and dominion, and the greatness of the kingdom under the whole heaven, shall be given to the people of the saints of the most High, whose kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and all dominions shall serve and obey him.*

- And then directly AFTER God's wrath is finished, the KINGDOM's of the earth are the Lord's.
- They are going to be given to the saints of the MOST HIGH. His kingdom is an everlasting kingdom.
- It's not like Babylon that was destroyed. It's not the Persians and the Medes.
- It's not like the GRECIAN empire. It's not like the ROMAN EMPIRE. These are all worldly kingdoms.
- The anti-Christ might have the most powerful worldly kingdom in existence, but God will destroy it.
- And then the HEAVENLY KINGDOM will be setup here on EARTH.
- And God gives that to all of the saved people. And all people will SERVE AND OBEY God.

**[47] Daniel 7:28** *Hitherto is the end of the matter. As for me Daniel, my cogitations much troubled me, and my countenance changed in me: but I kept the matter in my heart.*

- So this is the END OF THE MATTER. His visions are an overview of the end times.
- Daniel didn't fully understand everything. We don't fully understand everything.
- But Daniel didn't have the indwelling of the Holy Spirit or the New Testament.
- He didn't have the Book of Revelation, but we do. And we need to work to understand it all.

His cogitations are his thoughts over all of these things.

- His countenance changed because he was troubled.
- But he says that he kept all of this within his heart.
- And remember, he saw these visions in the FIRST YEAR of BELSHAZZAR.
- That was a ruler of BABYLON. So Daniel knew Babylon would be overthrown.
- At the end of Belshazzar's reign, he saw the writing on the wall. Daniel told him what it meant.

**[48] Daniel 5:28 PERES; Thy kingdom is divided, and given to the Medes and Persians.**

- So, these visions helped Daniel to understand more BUT he also knew there was more to these dreams.
- And we now know that there was an immediate fulfillment of this prophecy.
- But we also know there's a FUTURE fulfillment of the BOOK OF DANIEL.
- The fourth great kingdom is like Rome, but it represents the Kingdom of the Anti-Christ.
- And it's going to be a world wide kingdom, and a great kingdom.
- But God will take it all out slowly with HIS WRATH and will hand the kingdom to the SAINTS.
- And the SAINTS will rule and reign with Jesus Christ FOREVER. Amen.

Let's pray.

## SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 8

[2] The title of the sermon today is "DANIEL CHAPTER 8."

- In Daniel Chapter 7, we saw Daniel have a dream in the first year of Belshazzar.
- Belshazzar was the last King of Babylon before the Medes and Persians conquered Babylon.
- Daniel saw 4 great beasts come up out of the sea.
- The first was like a lion, second was like a bear, third was like a leopard.
- The fourth was dreadful and terrible and exceeding strong. It was different than all the other beasts.
- We saw a little horn come up out of the horns that were on this fourth and final beast.

***[3] Daniel 7:8 I considered the horns, and, behold, there came up among them another little horn, before whom there were three of the first horns plucked up by the roots: and, behold, in this horn were eyes like the eyes of man, and a mouth speaking great things.***

- We know that the beasts represent these world wide kingdoms and rulers.
- We know that these kingdoms and rulers have already happened but there's a future fulfillment too.
- The little horn of this fourth and great kingdom sounds just like the antichrist in Revelation.
- The antichrist will have a mouth that speaks great things. The world will follow after him.

After that, we saw the ANCIENT OF DAYS sitting on the throne.

- He wears a white garment. The hair of his head is like pure wool.
- He sits on a throne that's like a fiery flame. His wheels are like burning fire.
- 1,000 x 1,000 or 1 million minister to the Ancient of Days who is God.
- 10,000 x 10,000 or 100 million stand before him. The books are opened for judgement.
- Hey, look, God uses this book called the WORD OF GOD to judge. We better know what it says.

We see that the beast is slain. And remember, in Revelation, the beast is called the antichrist.

- The body of the beast is destroyed in Daniel Chapter 7 and given to the burning flame.
- We see Jesus coming in the clouds in Daniel Chapter 7, and I want to read you that verse.

***[4] Daniel 7:13-14 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him. 14 And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.***

- We know that Jesus will come in the clouds at HIS SECOND COMING.
- Jesus comes to the Ancient of Days. That means the ANCIENT OF DAYS is God the Father.
- But we also know that Jesus Christ is eternal as well. Jesus Christ is God.
- But, obviously, this shows that Jesus Christ is a different person than His Father, the Ancient of Days.
- We also know that the Kingdom of Jesus Christ will NEVER be destroyed like the kingdoms of the beasts.

***[5] Daniel 7:17-18 These great beasts, which are four, are four kings, which shall arise out of the earth. 18 But the saints of the most High shall take the kingdom, and possess the kingdom for ever, even for ever and ever.***

- We will come back to earth with Jesus on white horses and we will take the kingdom from the beast.
- We won't even have to fight. We'll be in our new, glorified, and immortal bodies.
- God will win the battle so you better be on God's side. We already know who wins.
- The Bible tells us. You want to be on the winning side.
- But, we won't always be on the winning side in this life and in this flesh.
- Before Jesus comes back, we can lose some battles. The antichrist will overcome the saints.

**[6] Daniel 7:21-22** *I beheld, and the same horn made war with the saints, and prevailed against them; 22 Until the Ancient of days came, and judgment was given to the saints of the most High; and the time came that the saints possessed the kingdom.*

- The antichrist will prevail against the saints. And that will happen until God comes back.
- And then we know that Jesus comes back AFTER THE TRIBULATION at the rapture or the second coming.
- We know the tribulation lasts for about 3-1/2 years.
- We know that the rapture is about in the middle of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week or 7-year period.
- And we know that antichrist will rule on this earth for about 3-1/2 years after the rapture.

**[7] Daniel 7:25** *And he shall speak great words against the most High, and shall wear out the saints of the most High, and think to change times and laws: and they shall be given into his hand until a time and times and the dividing of time.*

- With that quick summary of Daniel Chapter 7, let's get started there in verse 1 of Daniel Chapter 8.

**[8] Daniel 8:1** *In the third year of the reign of king Belshazzar a vision appeared unto me, even unto me Daniel, after that which appeared unto me at the first.*

- Now, we see Daniel receive this vision in the third year of King Belshazzar.
- Remember, the vision from Daniel Chapter 7 was from the first year of King Belshazzar's reign.

**[9] Daniel 8:2** *And I saw in a vision; and it came to pass, when I saw, that I was at Shushan in the palace, which is in the province of Elam; and I saw in a vision, and I was by the river of Ulai.*

- The river Ulai is in Shushan. There was a palace in Shushan and Daniel is in this area within his vision.
- Daniel is standing there by the river Ulai in Shushan. This is about where that was located.

**[10]**

- You can see it's close to the Western border of Iran today.
- You see Iraq, Syria, Jordan, and Israel to the West there.

Shushan is seen in the Book of Esther many years after King Belshazzar's reign in Daniel.

- SHUSHAN the palace is mentioned 8 times in the Bible. 7 are in Esther and the other in Nehemiah.
- Nehemiah is actually the first book of the Bible where we see Shushan.

**[11] Nehemiah 1:1-2** *The words of Nehemiah the son of Hachaliah. And it came to pass in the month Chisleu, in the twentieth year, as I was in Shushan the palace, 2 That Hanani, one of my brethren, came, he and certain*

***men of Judah; and I asked them concerning the Jews that had escaped, which were left of the captivity, and concerning Jerusalem.***

- So Nehemiah is a Book about re-building the wall of Jerusalem.
- Nehemiah rebuilding the wall is approximately 100 years AFTER Daniel has his vision in Daniel Chapter 8.
- Shushan the Palace was in Elam as Daniel Chapter 8 mentions but then is in the Persian Kingdom.
- Cyrus the Great conquered Shushan before he conquered Babylon.
- So let's see what Daniel's vision is as he stands by this river close to Shushan the palace.

***[12] Daniel 8:3 Then I lifted up mine eyes, and saw, and, behold, there stood before the river a ram which had two horns: and the two horns were high; but one was higher than the other, and the higher came up last.***

- Daniel looks up and see he's a ram standing before the river. The ram had two horns.
- One of the horns was higher than the other. What is this ram with two horns?
- If we look down to verse 20 of Daniel Chapter 8, we'll see the answer.

***[13] Daniel 8:20 The ram which thou sawest having two horns are the kings of Media and Persia.***

- Remember, Babylon is currently the great kingdom. Belshazzar is the current king of Babylon.
- Now Daniel is seeing this ram which represents Media and Persia.
- The first horn is Darius the Mede. We see him first in the Book of Daniel.
- Daniel Chapters 1 through 6 are in chronological order. We saw Darius the Mede in Daniel Chapter 5.

***[14] Daniel 5:30-31 In that night was Belshazzar the king of the Chaldeans slain. 31 And Darius the Median took the kingdom, being about threescore and two years old.***

- Darius the Mede is this first horn that is great but the second horn is higher.
- Darius the Mede is the king who threw Daniel into the lion's den but was happy he was okay.
- And that second horn that is higher is the first king of the Persians, which we see in Daniel Chapter 6.

***[15] Daniel 6:28 So this Daniel prospered in the reign of Darius, and in the reign of Cyrus the Persian.***

- Cyrus the Persian is the second horn that comes up higher on this ram that is standing by the river.
- In other words, Daniel is seeing a vision of the future kings or rulers.

***[16] Daniel 8:4 I saw the ram pushing westward, and northward, and southward; so that no beasts might stand before him, neither was there any that could deliver out of his hand; but he did according to his will, and became great.***

- So, this ram or these two kings that represent the kingdoms of the Medes and Persians will conquer.
- They are going to conquer to the West, North, and South. None else could come up against them.
- And that ram or these kings did as they pleased and became great kings and rulers.

But, we know that all of that comes to an end from Daniel Chapter 2.

- We saw that great image from King Nebuchadnezzar's dream and it was in four parts.
- We know Babylon is at the top, then the Medes and Persians, then the Greeks, then the Romans.



- This is the order of how it actually happened in history.
- So, after the Medes and the Persians with this ram, we should see the Greeks next in Daniel Chapter 8.

***[17] Daniel 8:5 And as I was considering, behold, an he goat came from the west on the face of the whole earth, and touched not the ground: and the goat had a notable horn between his eyes.***

- Now, we see this he goat come from the West on the face of the whole earth.
- He didn't touch the ground which means he was running very fast.
- For example, when our little dog runs, she runs so fast that her legs don't look they hit the ground.
- This he goat has a NOTABLE HORN between it's eyes. Let's see who and what this represents.
- We look down to verse 21 of Daniel Chapter 8.

***[18] Daniel 8:21 And the rough goat is the king of Grecia: and the great horn that is between his eyes is the first king.***

- So, we see the Book of Daniel is pretty amazing. It's telling us exactly what his vision means.
- This was written long before any of this actually happened.
- Remember, we're in the third year of Belshazzar. The first king of Grecia was Alexander the Great.
- He's like this rough goat and the notable horn. He's quick. He conquers swiftly.
- In Daniel Chapter 7, he's likened in another vision to a leopard.

***[19] Daniel 7:6 After this I beheld, and lo another, like a leopard, which had upon the back of it four wings of a fowl; the beast had also four heads; and dominion was given to it.***

- Notice in Daniel Chapter 8 verse 5 that the he goat comes from the West. That matches Greece perfectly.
- Let's see what happens next. So, we have a ram standing by the river and now the he goat is there too.

***[20] Daniel 8:6 And he came to the ram that had two horns, which I had seen standing before the river, and ran unto him in the fury of his power.***

- The he goat with the notable horn runs with FURY towards the ram.
- In other words, the Kingdom of Grecia with Alexander the Great runs towards the Medes and Persians with Darius the Mede and Cyrus the Persian.

***[21] Daniel 8:7 And I saw him come close unto the ram, and he was moved with choler against him, and smote the ram, and brake his two horns: and there was no power in the ram to stand before him, but he cast him down to the ground, and stamped upon him: and there was none that could deliver the ram out of his hand.***

- The he goat comes close to the ram and he moves with CHOLER or ANGER and WRATH against him.
- This he goat is angry. He breaks the two horns or the two kings on that ram.
- He takes away the power or the horns from the ram.
- At the very first battle between the Persians and the Grecians, Alexander had 30,000 men.
- The Persians had more than 150,000 men. Alexander the Great won that battle.
- He only lost a few men that day compared to the tens of thousands for the Persians.
- There were a couple more battles that went the same way. It wasn't a fluke.
- King Darius and King Cyrus lost their power quickly. Alexander the Great stomped them.

**[22] Daniel 8:8** *Therefore the he goat waxed very great: and when he was strong, the great horn was broken; and for it came up four notable ones toward the four winds of heaven.*

- Alexander the Great waxed very great. He's known as THE ALEXANDER in history.
- When he was around 33 years old, he died. Some people suspect he was poisoned.
- Some people think he died from drugs and alcohol.

**[23] Psalm 55:23** *But thou, O God, shalt bring them down into the pit of destruction: bloody and deceitful men shall not live out half their days; but I will trust in thee.*

- Sometimes this happens to wicked and evil people. They don't live out half their days.
- Alexander the Great died at 33 years old when the kingdom was strong just as it says there in verse 8.
- His empire was divided into four kingdoms. Greece, Egypt, Syria, and Asia. There were 4 kings over those.
- So these 4 kings were notable kings from the 4 directions or the 4 winds of heaven.
- Greece to the West, Syria to the North, Egypt to the South, and Asia to the East.
- In Daniel Chapter 7, the leopard had 4 heads. These are the 4 new kings of the 4 kingdoms of Greece.

**[24] Daniel 8:9** *And out of one of them came forth a little horn, which waxed exceeding great, toward the south, and toward the east, and toward the pleasant land.*

- Remember, there are now 4 kingdoms within the Grecian empire.
- Out of one of those 4 kingdoms comes this little horn that grows.
- He becomes great towards the South and towards the East and towards the pleasant land.

**[25] Daniel 8:10** *And it waxed great, even to the host of heaven; and it cast down some of the host and of the stars to the ground, and stamped upon them.*

- This is still talking about this little horn or ruler coming out of the kingdom of Greece.
- He waxed great even to the host of heaven. Who does that sound like in verse 10?
- "And it cast down some of the host and of the stars to the ground, and stamped upon them."

**[26] Revelation 12:4** *And his tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven, and did cast them to the earth: and the dragon stood before the woman which was ready to be delivered, for to devour her child as soon as it was born.*

- This ruler from Greece is like Satan. He's evil. He's wicked. The Book of Daniel is telling us this.

**[27] Isaiah 14:12-14** *How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations! 13 For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north: 14 I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High.*

- So, this little horn is waxing great and is like Satan.
- This is also a picture of the antichrist. Satan controls the antichrist and gives him his power.
- And then watch what this ruler does in the next verse of Daniel Chapter 8.

**[28] Daniel 8:11** *Yea, he magnified himself even to the prince of the host, and by him the daily sacrifice was taken away, and the place of his sanctuary was cast down.*

- Now, we see he magnifies himself in front of God. He does this by blaspheming God.
- He speaks great things against God. He even takes the daily sacrifice away.
- The daily sacrifice was still being done at this time. Remember where we are.
- This is after both Israel and Judah are conquered by Babylon.
- This is after the Medes and the Persians. This is after the temple and wall is rebuilt in Jerusalem.
- The daily sacrifice is taking place UNTIL this king from Greece magnifies himself and takes it away.
- This is him attempting to show he is greater than God Almighty. That's what the antichrist will do.
- Remember, we have an immediate fulfillment of this prophecy but there's also a future fulfillment.

**[29] Daniel 8:12** *And an host was given him against the daily sacrifice by reason of transgression, and it cast down the truth to the ground; and it practised, and prospered.*

- This little horn has all the help he needs. A host was given him to stop this daily sacrifice.
- The truth was taken away. Just like we see in today's world.
- The truth of the Bible is cast down to the ground. Even in churches, "Oh, we don't need the Bible."
- A preacher came to my house not too long ago and says, "I don't know why churches use the Bible."
- "We don't use the Bible. We talk and let people give their opinion." WHAT???
- No, your opinion doesn't matter. THE TRUTH WITHIN THE BIBLE MATTERS!!!
- The lies "practiced and prospered" there at the end of verse 12. We see that today.
- But this little horn from Greece is growing stronger and stronger.
- That's exactly what happens in Revelation with the antichrist. So, we see a picture of the antichrist here.

**[30] Daniel 8:13** *Then I heard one saint speaking, and another saint said unto that certain saint which spake, How long shall be the vision concerning the daily sacrifice, and the transgression of desolation, to give both the sanctuary and the host to be trodden under foot?*

- Remember, Daniel is seeing all of this in a vision in Shushan as he stands by the river Ulai.
- This isn't a history book. This is prophecy and Daniel sees all of this long before it actually happens.
- Daniel hears two saints speaking. One says, "How long will the daily sacrifice be taken away?"

When the actual animal sacrifice to God is taken away, it's called the transgression of desolation.

- They've transgressed and made the temple of God on earth desolate.
- In other words, the sanctuary and the host of the sanctuary are trodden under foot.
- When you reject something, a picture of that is stomping it under your feet.
- That's what this little horn is doing to the daily sacrifice of God's people.
- How long is this transgression of desolation going to take place?

**[31] Daniel 8:14** *And he said unto me, Unto two thousand and three hundred days; then shall the sanctuary be cleansed.*

- This has a future fulfillment to Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week or the 7-year period of time explained in Revelation.
- We know in the future that the daily sacrifice will start again. The temple will be used for a daily sacrifice.

- Once that begins, the 2,300 days will start. At the end of the 2,300 days, the sanctuary is cleansed.
- That's at the very end of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week. The sanctuary will be clean once again.
- Jesus Christ is the sanctuary and the sacrifice, and he is coming to earth on a white horse.
- At the abomination of desolation, the antichrist will STOP that daily sacrifice.
- This is just like the little horn in Daniel Chapter 8. Let's learn more about this little horn.
- If we move down to verse 22 of Daniel Chapter 8, we'll see more.

***[32] Daniel 8:22 Now that being broken, whereas four stood up for it, four kingdoms shall stand up out of the nation, but not in his power.***

- That being broken is talking about the horn who was Alexander the Great.
- Remember, Alexander the Great was the first leader of the kingdom of Grecia.
- He died at a young age. Four generals of his take over four kingdoms in Grecia.
- They are strong but they don't have that same power that Alexander the Great had.

***[33] Daniel 8:23 And in the latter time of their kingdom, when the transgressors are come to the full, a king of fierce countenance, and understanding dark sentences, shall stand up.***

- This is the little horn that takes away the daily sacrifice. A king of fierce countenance.
- He understands dark sentences. He's evil. And this is in the latter time of the kingdom of Grecia.
- So, we should be able to find out who this is in actual history. Who was this king of Grecia?
- Who was this king that took away the daily sacrifice? Let's keep reading for more clues.

***[34] Daniel 8:24 And his power shall be mighty, but not by his own power: and he shall destroy wonderfully, and shall prosper, and practise, and shall destroy the mighty and the holy people.***

- Notice where it says, "but not by his own power." That's talking about Satan helping him.
- He destroys the mighty and the holy people. This is also a picture of the future antichrist.
- The future antichrist will prevail against the saints. Daniel Chapter 7 told us that.

***[35] Daniel 8:25 And through his policy also he shall cause craft to prosper in his hand; and he shall magnify himself in his heart, and by peace shall destroy many: he shall also stand up against the Prince of princes; but he shall be broken without hand.***

- Notice that this says, "through his policy also he shall cause craft to prosper."
- Do you remember from verse 23 that he understood "DARK SENTENCES?" Craft is referring to witchcraft.
- He magnifies HIMSELF within HIS HEART. That's evil and wicked. Don't magnify yourself.
- Remember, we don't want to be anything like this evil and wicked man. Witchcraft is evil.
- You don't want to understand dark sentences and the way of darkness.
- You don't want to access the evil and dark side of this world. Stay away from it.

***[36] Acts 8:9-10 But there was a certain man, called Simon, which beforetime in the same city used sorcery, and bewitched the people of Samaria, giving out that himself was some great one: 10 To whom they all gave heed, from the least to the greatest, saying, This man is the great power of God.***

- Why do people want to use witchcraft, sorcery, and magic?

- It's simple. They want to show themselves powerful. They want people to think they are like God.
- And that's what this little horn is doing from the kingdom of Grecia in Daniel Chapter 8.
- And yes, it works and it fools people. People begin to believe they are special.
- There are no good witches. There is no good version of sorcery. Stay away from all of it.
- The antichrist in Revelation will do similar things. People will think he's God. He will perform miracles.
- The people will say, "This must be God." Just like Simon there in Acts Chapter 8.

This little horn from Daniel Chapter 8 destroys many and stands up against God with Satan's help as always.

- Satan is always behind these things. He deceives people into thinking they're more powerful.
- He makes them believe that they are mighty and no one can stop them.
- He gives them power. They hand over their soul to Satan for destruction.
- Satan deceives people into standing up against God. They think have power against God.
- In reality, if they knew what they were doing, they would run and hide in fear of God Almighty.
- Notice it says at the end of verse 25, "but he shall be broken without hand."
- This little horn from the kingdom of Grecia loses. He thought he was all powerful.
- As we all know, though, he wasn't. All men have to die. You can't defeat death.
- And when an evil and wicked person dies, they go to hell. And you aren't winning that one.

Now, we should know who this little horn is with all of this evidence.

- And remember, it has to be a ruler who comes up out of one of these 4 kingdoms towards the latter part of the Grecian empire.
- The man's name is Antiochus (AN-TY-O-CHUS) Epiphanes. He came out of the northern kingdom of Syria.
- And we saw from verse 9 of this chapter that he waxed exceeding great towards the south, east, and pleasant land.

***[37] Daniel 8:9 And out of one of them came forth a little horn, which waxed exceeding great, toward the south, and toward the east, and toward the pleasant land.***

- Antiochus Epiphanes comes out of the north and pushes his greatness towards these directions.
- He went to Egypt and fought against the king of Egypt. He took many cities there.
- The king of Egypt ran from Antiochus Epiphanes.

So this man comes from the North and goes through JUDEA which is the pleasant land.

- He ruled over the Jews from around 175 BC to 164 BC.
- His power grows from the North in all directions. People do what he says. They fear him.
- Here's his head from a statue to give you an idea of what he looked like.

***[38]***

- I want to show you an image of coins from his rule.

***[39]***

- The coins read Antiochus Epiphanes, God Manifest.
- In other words, he thinks he is God manifest in the flesh. He's a picture of the antichrist.
- He claims to be God himself. This man is evil and wicked and claiming to be CHRIST.

**[40] 1 Timothy 3:16** *And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: God was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory.*

- Do you think some of those Jews were fooled that he reigned over? Of course they were.
- They probably thought he was the savior and was going to rule over them as their king forever.
- That's going to happen again in Revelation with the antichrist.
- And the warnings are all throughout the Bible.

**[41] Matthew 24:4-5** *And Jesus answered and said unto them, Take heed that no man deceive you. 5 For many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ; and shall deceive many.*

**[42] Mark 13:5-6** *And Jesus answering them began to say, Take heed lest any man deceive you: 6 For many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ; and shall deceive many.*

**[43] Luke 21:8** *And he said, Take heed that ye be not deceived: for many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ; and the time draweth near: go ye not therefore after them.*

- But, let's be serious. Not many people in churches today even read the Bible.
- They don't see the warnings. They don't see the truth.
- And notice this man's name is ANTI-O-CHUS. The first 4 letters spell ANTI just like antichrist.

He took away the daily sacrifice just like the Book of Daniel said he would.

- He didn't allow the Jews to practice any part of their religion.
- He went through the temple and took everything out.
- He desecrated the temple by offering the sacrifice of a pig on the altar to Zeus.
- That's called making the temple desolate. That's the transgression of desolation.
- This is a picture and warning of what's going to happen in the future.

This man named Antiochus Epiphanes died to end his reign at the age of 50 or 51 years old.

- Some accounts say he died suddenly of disease. Some say he drowned himself purposely in the sea.
- But we do know, he wasn't GOD MANIFEST IN THE FLESH. He sure didn't arise on the third day.
- He is the little horn talked about in Daniel Chapter 8, and he is a picture of the antichrist.
- Another little horn is going to come up in Revelation and will be the final antichrist.
- He will be much greater than Antiochus Epiphanes from the Kingdom of Grecia.
- So, yes, things in Daniel have already happened but they will happen again.
- Now, let's go back to verse 14 of Daniel Chapter 8.

**[44] Daniel 8:14** *And he said unto me, Unto two thousand and three hundred days; then shall the sanctuary be cleansed.*

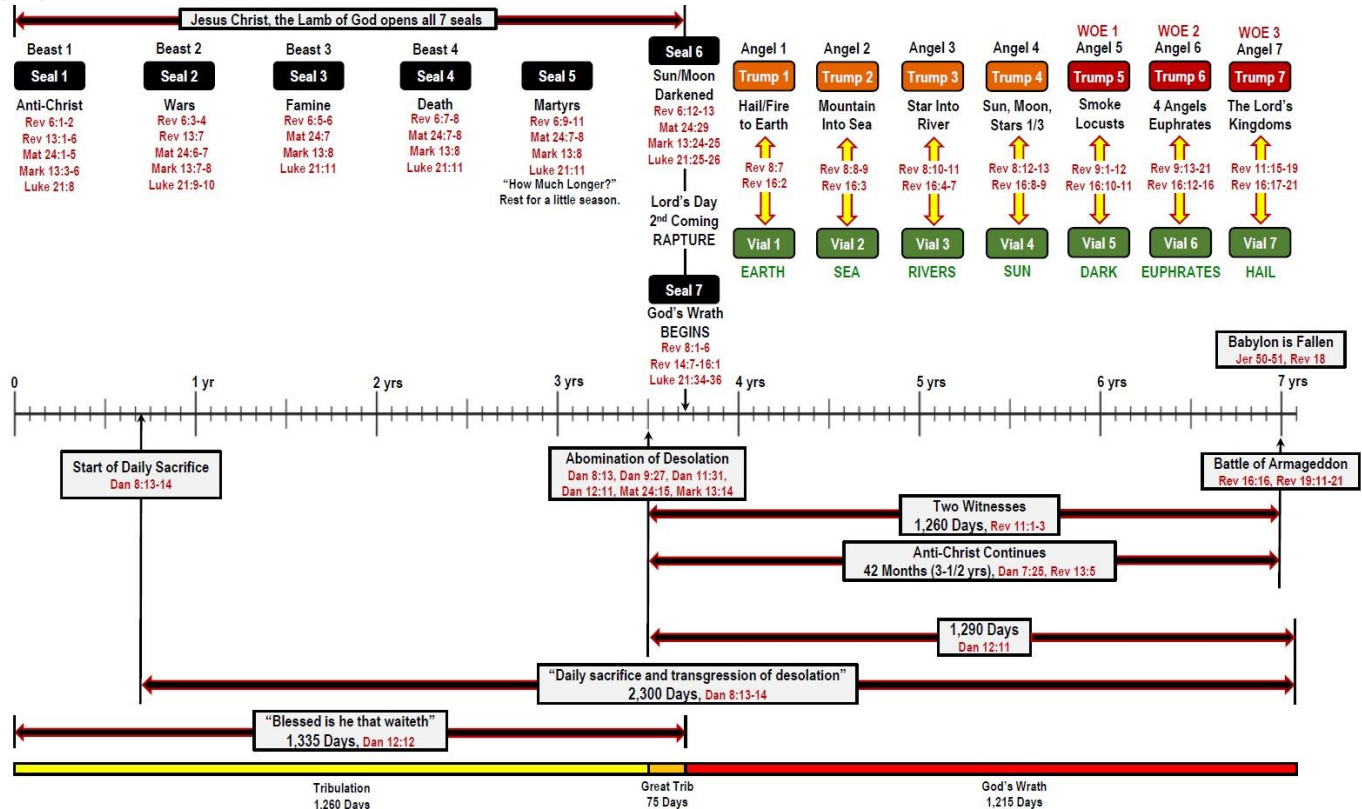
- This verse has an application to future prophecy in the Book of Revelation.
- A goal of the Jews is to rebuild the temple. There's a problem right now, though, with that.
- The Muslims have a mosque and the Dome of the Rock that are built on the exact location of the temple.
- This was the exact location of Solomon's temple.



[45]

- Many others think that Jesus will rebuild the temple when he comes.
- The daily sacrifice isn't being done right now. But it will start again during Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week.
- The antichrist will take the daily sacrifice away similar to that of Antiochus Epiphanes.
- So, you can take 2,300 days from the very end of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week and count backwards.
- You'll see that on the Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week charts.

[46]



- You'll see that the start of the daily sacrifice will begin after the tribulation begins.
- You'll see the Abomination of Desolation in the midst of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week.
- That's when the antichrist will come in and stop the daily sacrifice.
- That's when his focus will change to killing all the SAINTS. The great tribulation begins at that point.
- I want to show you proof of that from the words of Jesus Christ himself.

[47] **Matthew 24:15-17** When ye therefore shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, stand in the holy place, (whoso readeth, let him understand:) 16 Then let them which be in Judaea flee into the mountains: 17 Let him which is on the housetop not come down to take any thing out of his house:

[48] **Matthew 24:18-20** Neither let him which is in the field return back to take his clothes. 19 And woe unto them that are with child, and to them that give suck in those days! 20 But pray ye that your flight be not in the winter, neither on the sabbath day:



**[49] Matthew 24:21-22** *For then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be. 22 And except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved: but for the elect's sake those days shall be shortened.*

- So, once you see the abomination of desolation, "For then shall be great tribulation."
- That's what you see on the chart we have there. It all goes perfectly with the words in the Bible.
- "And except those days be shortened, there should be no FLESH saved."
- "But for the elect's sake those days shall be shortened."
- So, when the days are shortened, the great tribulation ends when Jesus comes in the clouds.
- Why? He saves the SAINTS in their flesh who are left on the earth at that time.

**[50] 1 Thessalonians 4:17** *Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.*

- I hope that part of the chart now makes more sense to you.
- The daily sacrifice and the abomination of desolation should be much clearer now.
- The example from Antiochus Epiphanes gives us an idea of what that will look like.

**[51] Daniel 8:15-16** *And it came to pass, when I, even I Daniel, had seen the vision, and sought for the meaning, then, behold, there stood before me as the appearance of a man. 16 And I heard a man's voice between the banks of Ulai, which called, and said, Gabriel, make this man to understand the vision.*

- Daniel didn't know the meaning of the vision. He sought for the meaning.
- Just like when you read the Bible, and you don't know exactly what it means.
- You should seek for the meaning because you want to understand it. That's what Daniel did.
- A man stands before him in this vision. The man is standing between Daniel and the banks of the river.
- The man calls out to the angel GABRIEL and asks him to help Daniel to understand.

The name, Gabriel, is seen 4 times in the Bible and this is one of the four times in Daniel Chapter 8.

- He's also seen in Daniel Chapter 9 and the other two times are in the Book of Luke Chapter 1.
- He speaks with Zacharias who is the father of John the Baptist. Zacharias doesn't believe him.
- Zacharias and Elizabeth had been praying for a child. They were having trouble having a child.
- Gabriel shows up and tells Zacharias he will have a child. Zacharias doubts and he can't speak.
- Then Gabriel shows up to Mary in Luke Chapter 1 and tells Mary this:

**[52] Luke 1:31-33** *And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name JESUS. 32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David: 33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.*

- Gabriel brings the good news in Luke Chapter 1. In Daniel Chapter 8, he explains the vision to Daniel.

**[53] Daniel 8:17** *So he came near where I stood: and when he came, I was afraid, and fell upon my face: but he said unto me, Understand, O son of man: for at the time of the end shall be the vision.*

- This Gabriel must be feared. Daniel becomes afraid. Zacharias and Mary were afraid too.

- Daniel is so scared he falls on his face in this vision. Notice what he tells Daniel.
- "FOR AT THE TIME OF THE END SHALL BE THE VISION." So we know these are future events.
- But we also know this vision is telling us about the end of the world. And it matches Revelation perfectly.

***[54] Daniel 8:18-19 Now as he was speaking with me, I was in a deep sleep on my face toward the ground: but he touched me, and set me upright. 19 And he said, Behold, I will make thee know what shall be in the last end of the indignation: for at the time appointed the end shall be.***

- Daniel is in this deep sleep on his face and Gabriel is speaking with him.
- Gabriel touches Daniel and sets him back upright versus directly on his face. Imagine that.
- In verse 19, Gabriel says he's going to make known what will happen before God's final indignation.
- Indignation is extreme anger or wrath from God. We know from Revelation that God's wrath is at the end.
- God begins to pour out his wrath right after the rapture and to the end of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week.
- Now, he's going to tell us about the ram, the he goat, and the little horn that we talked about already.
- Let's read those verses again in order. Verse 20.

***[55] Daniel 8:20-21 The ram which thou sawest having two horns are the kings of Media and Persia. 21 And the rough goat is the king of Grecia: and the great horn that is between his eyes is the first king.***

- Again, the two horns on the ram are King Darius of Media and King Cyrus of Persia.
- Alexander the Great is the great horn on the rough goat who represents Grecia.

***[56] Daniel 8:22-23 Now that being broken, whereas four stood up for it, four kingdoms shall stand up out of the nation, but not in his power. 23 And in the latter time of their kingdom, when the transgressors are come to the full, a king of fierce countenance, and understanding dark sentences, shall stand up.***

- Alexander the Great, or the horn, is broken when he dies at a young age.
- The 4 generals stand up in the four kingdoms of Grecia.
- In the latter part of the kingdom, we see a little horn arise named AN-TI-O-CHUS Epiphanes.
- Hu understands the way of darkness, witchcraft, and sorcery as we learned earlier.

***[57] Daniel 8:24-25 And his power shall be mighty, but not by his own power: and he shall destroy wonderfully, and shall prosper, and practise, and shall destroy the mighty and the holy people. 25 And through his policy also he shall cause craft to prosper in his hand; and he shall magnify himself in his heart, and by peace shall destroy many: he shall also stand up against the Prince of princes; but he shall be broken without hand.***

- Satan gives this antichrist power so he stands up against God. He's broken. Don't even try it.

***[58] Daniel 8:26 And the vision of the evening and the morning which was told is true: wherefore shut thou up the vision; for it shall be for many days.***

- The vision of the EVENING and MORNING means the 2300 days are 2300 evenings and 2300 mornings.
- The vision is TRUE God says right here in the Bible. This means there will be 2,300 days.
- Now, did it happen like that with Antiochus Epiphanes? I have no idea.
- Records from history say that it wasn't 2,300 days but much shorter than that.

In prophecy, sometimes the latter fulfillment is the EXACT fulfillment.

- And the first instance is the PICTURE of what it's going to be like in the future.
- For sure, I know it's going to be 2,300 days in the Book of Revelation. The vision is TRUE.
- And it says this is all about the end. "Shut thou up the vision; for it shall be for MANY DAYS."
- So, it happened already in Daniel, but there's a future fulfillment that hasn't happened yet.

***[59] Daniel 8:27 And I Daniel fainted, and was sick certain days; afterward I rose up, and did the king's business; and I was astonished at the vision, but none understood it.***

- So Gabriel explains it to Daniel. Daniel writes it down. But Daniel still didn't understand it.
- He fainted. He was sick for several days. He arose and did his normal job for the king.
- He was astonished at the vision. And he still didn't understand it. God says, "SEAL IT UP."
- Now, we have the light of the Book of Revelation and the New Testament to help us.
- Now, we can better understand this vision.

Let's pray.

## SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 9

[2] The title of the sermon today is "DANIEL CHAPTER 9."

- In Daniel Chapter 8, we learned about the vision Daniel had.
- He had that vision in the 3<sup>rd</sup> year of the reign of King Belshazzar of Babylon.
- King Belshazzar was the last king of Babylon before they were conquered by the Medes and Persians.
- In Daniel's vision, he's standing by a river near Shushan the palace.
- He sees a ram with two horns, which represent King Darius the Mede and King Cyrus the Persian.
- He then sees a he goat with one strong horn come up and smash the ram.
- The one strong horn is Alexander the Great. He's the first king of Grecia.

So, we've seen Babylon conquered by the Medes and Persians and then the Persians conquered by the Grecians.

- Alexander the Great dies at 33 years old. The kingdom of Grecia is split into 4.
- Towards the end of the Grecian kingdom, we see a king come out of the Northern kingdom in Syria.
- This Grecian king is the little horn described in Daniel Chapter 8.
- This little horn is an antichrist and his name is Antiochus Epiphanes.

He took away the daily sacrifice from Jerusalem. He leaves the temple desolate.

- He comes and clears out the temple. He sacrifices a swine to the false God Zeus on the altar.
- He has coins made that say he is God manifest in the flesh.
- He is a picture of the future antichrist that we see in the Book of Revelation.
- We learned about the Abomination of Desolation.

Daniel writes all of this down for us in Daniel Chapter 8, but he doesn't understand it all.

- Gabriel adds further explanation within Daniel Chapter 8, but Daniel still doesn't understand everything.
- God says to seal up this vision for now. It's not going to happen for MANY DAYS.
- Daniel is troubled there at the end of Chapter 8. He faints. He gets sick for several days.
- And then he goes back to work for the king of Babylon.
- With that quick summary, let's start there in Daniel Chapter 9 verse 1.

**[3] Daniel 9:1 In the first year of Darius the son of Ahasuerus, of the seed of the Medes, which was made king over the realm of the Chaldeans;**

- In Daniel Chapter 8, we were in the third year of King Belshazzar of Babylon.
- Babylon is conquered by this Darius of the Medes that we see here in verse 1.
- The Babylonians are called the Chaldeans. He was made king over the entire realm of Babylon.
- Darius is the son of Ahasuerus. This is not the same Ahasuerus from the book of Esther.
- Darius himself lived before King Ahasuerus of Persia that we see in Esther.

**[4] Esther 1:1 Now it came to pass in the days of Ahasuerus, (this is Ahasuerus which reigned, from India even unto Ethiopia, over an hundred and seven and twenty provinces:)**

- We know that because Darius was the first king of the Medes and Persians.
- Ahasuerus in Esther is after King Darius the Mede so the Ahasuerus in Daniel 9 verse 1 is a different one.

**[5] Daniel 9:2** *In the first year of his reign I Daniel understood by books the number of the years, whereof the word of the LORD came to Jeremiah the prophet, that he would accomplish seventy years in the desolations of Jerusalem.*

- In the first year of King Darius the Mede, Daniel now understands by books the number of years.
- What books? The books of the Bible. Yes, Daniel studied the Scriptures.
- Well, what number of years? The number of years in the Book of Jeremiah the prophet.
- There will be 70 years in the desolation of Jerusalem. Desolation means deprived, wasted, or ruined.
- In other words, Jerusalem is going to be ruined. It's going to be desolate for 70 years.
- To find out more, though, let's read Jeremiah and see what he says.

**[6] Jeremiah 25:9** *Behold, I will send and take all the families of the north, saith the LORD, and Nebuchadrezzar the king of Babylon, my servant, and will bring them against this land, and against the inhabitants thereof, and against all these nations round about, and will utterly destroy them, and make them an astonishment, and an hissing, and perpetual desolations.*

- Nebuchadrezzar is the same as King Nebuchadnezzar. He is God's servant.

**[7] Jeremiah 25:10-11** *Moreover I will take from them the voice of mirth, and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride, the sound of the millstones, and the light of the candle. 11 And this whole land shall be a desolation, and an astonishment; and these nations shall serve the king of Babylon seventy years.*

- There will be no more joy in that land. It's going to be a desolation and astonishment.
- All of the nations around, including Jerusalem, will serve the King of Babylon for 70 years.

**[8] Jeremiah 25:12-13** *And it shall come to pass, when seventy years are accomplished, that I will punish the king of Babylon, and that nation, saith the LORD, for their iniquity, and the land of the Chaldeans, and will make it perpetual desolations. 13 And I will bring upon that land all my words which I have pronounced against it, even all that is written in this book, which Jeremiah hath prophesied against all the nations.*

- At the end of the 70 years, God is going to punish the king of Babylon and the nation of Babylon.
- He's going to make their land a desolation too. Why? No one wants obey God or listen to God.
- We see that Daniel takes the book of Jeremiah and learns from it.
- He's like, "Hey, this is talking about now!!! I'm living at this time, and this is happening."
- Daniel is beginning to understand as we see in Daniel Chapter 9.

**[9] Jeremiah 29:10** *For thus saith the LORD, That after seventy years be accomplished at Babylon I will visit you, and perform my good word toward you, in causing you to return to this place.*

- Daniel knows that after 70 years, they will be able to return to Jerusalem.
- I want to look closer so you see exactly why God allowed JUDAH to be conquered by Babylon.
- The Book of 2 Chronicles gives us the answers.

**[10] 2 Chronicles 36:11-13** *Zedekiah was one and twenty years old when he began to reign, and reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. 12 And he did that which was evil in the sight of the LORD his God, and humbled not himself before Jeremiah the prophet speaking from the mouth of the LORD. 13 And he also rebelled against king Nebuchadnezzar, who had made him swear by God: but he stiffened his neck, and hardened his heart from turning unto the LORD God of Israel.*

**[11] 2 Chronicles 36:14-15** *Moreover all the chief of the priests, and the people, transgressed very much after all the abominations of the heathen; and polluted the house of the LORD which he had hallowed in Jerusalem. 15 And the LORD God of their fathers sent to them by his messengers, rising up betimes, and sending; because he had compassion on his people, and on his dwelling place:*

**[12] 2 Chronicles 36:16-17** *But they mocked the messengers of God, and despised his words, and misused his prophets, until the wrath of the LORD arose against his people, till there was no remedy. 17 Therefore he brought upon them the king of the Chaldees, who slew their young men with the sword in the house of their sanctuary, and had no compassion upon young man or maiden, old man, or him that stooped for age: he gave them all into his hand.*

**[13] 2 Chronicles 36:18-19** *And all the vessels of the house of God, great and small, and the treasures of the house of the LORD, and the treasures of the king, and of his princes; all these he brought to Babylon. 19 And they burnt the house of God, and brake down the wall of Jerusalem, and burnt all the palaces thereof with fire, and destroyed all the goodly vessels thereof.*

**[14] 2 Chronicles 36:20-21** *And them that had escaped from the sword carried he away to Babylon; where they were servants to him and his sons until the reign of the kingdom of Persia: 21 To fulfil the word of the LORD by the mouth of Jeremiah, until the land had enjoyed her sabbaths: for as long as she lay desolate she kept sabbath, to fulfil threescore and ten years.*

- That's why they were conquered by Babylon. They transgressed very much. They went away from God.
- All of those who escaped the sword were carried away to Babylon. Daniel was one of those people.
- Verse 20 right there says, "they were servants to Babylon until the reign of the kingdom of Persia."
- This fulfilled the word of the Lord by the mouth of Jeremiah.
- Right there at the end of verse 21 you see that the land laid desolate and fulfilled the Sabbath.
- No one was there so the land rested for THREESCORE and TEN.  $20 \times 3 + 10 = 70$  years.
- So everything matches perfectly between 2 Chronicles, Jeremiah, and Daniel.
- Daniel sees that this is happening now! Babylon has been conquered by the Medes and Persians.
- It must be time to go back to JUDAH and JERUSALEM. Daniel must be excited.

**[15] Daniel 9:3-4** *And I set my face unto the Lord God, to seek by prayer and supplications, with fasting, and sackcloth, and ashes: 4 And I prayed unto the LORD my God, and made my confession, and said, O Lord, the great and dreadful God, keeping the covenant and mercy to them that love him, and to them that keep his commandments;*

- Daniel goes to God to seek him by prayer and supplications. Supplications means an earnest request.
- He humbled himself in earnest prayer. He fasted. Covered himself in sackcloth which is humbling.
- Covering yourself in sackcloth and ashes would look something like this:

[16]

- Daniel is going to God because he's hoping it's time to go home to Jerusalem.
- Watch what Daniel says next in verse 5.

**[17] Daniel 9:5-6** *We have sinned, and have committed iniquity, and have done wickedly, and have rebelled, even by departing from thy precepts and from thy judgments: 6 Neither have we hearkened unto thy servants the prophets, which spake in thy name to our kings, our princes, and our fathers, and to all the people of the land.*

- Hey, listen, we don't want to be like this either. We need to do what God says.
- Let's not depart from his laws and his judgements. Let's not get away from God.
- Daniel is saying, "We know we have sinned and committed iniquity."
- God has sent all these people before us and we haven't listened to any of them.
- He gave us the Bible and people would rather not read it, but they'll go to church.
- But they won't touch the Bible. It sits there. People don't realize what they have with the Bible.

**[18] Daniel 9:7** *O Lord, righteousness belongeth unto thee, but unto us confusion of faces, as at this day; to the men of Judah, and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and unto all Israel, that are near, and that are far off, through all the countries whither thou hast driven them, because of their trespass that they have trespassed against thee.*

- Daniel knows that only the LORD GOD ALMIGHTY is righteous.
- He says, "O Lord, righteousness belongeth unto thee."
- God drove out all of the children Israel because of their trespasses against him.
- They were his chosen people. Now, anyone who believes on the Lord Jesus Christ are his chosen people.
- In other words, he'll do the same to us if we begin to trespass against him.

Daniel has read the books, he's studied the books, he's gaining wisdom and understanding.

- He is praying, fasting, humbling himself, and asking God to forgive him and all his people.
- Daniel is standing up for his people. He's saying, "God, we are confused but you are righteous."
- We have the entire Bible to study, and that's what we're doing just like Daniel.
- We need to follow what Daniel did right there. Read, study, pray, and ask God for help.
- We need to confess our sins to God. Yes, he already knows but you need to let him know.

**[19] 2 Chronicles 7:14** *If my people, which are called by my name, shall humble themselves, and pray, and seek my face, and turn from their wicked ways; then will I hear from heaven, and will forgive their sin, and will heal their land.*

**[20] Psalm 32:5** *I acknowledged my sin unto thee, and mine iniquity have I not hid. I said, I will confess my transgressions unto the LORD; and thou forgavest the iniquity of my sin. Selah.*

**[21] 1 John 1:9** *If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.*

- And this is what we see Daniel doing right here in Daniel Chapter 9. Let's keep going in verse 8.



**[22] Daniel 9:8-10** *O Lord, to us belongeth confusion of face, to our kings, to our princes, and to our fathers, because we have sinned against thee. 9 To the Lord our God belong mercies and forgivenesses, though we have rebelled against him; 10 Neither have we obeyed the voice of the LORD our God, to walk in his laws, which he set before us by his servants the prophets.*

- God set forth his law. We have not obeyed the voice of the Lord our God.
- That's us too. That's not just the children of Israel on the Book of Daniel.

**[23] Daniel 9:11** *Yea, all Israel have transgressed thy law, even by departing, that they might not obey thy voice; therefore the curse is poured upon us, and the oath that is written in the law of Moses the servant of God, because we have sinned against him.*

- God gave them all the warnings they need. He's given us all the warnings we need.
- But again, they ignored his words, and we have ignored his words. Look at our country.
- Is there anyone that fears God? Is there anyone who wants to follow God?
- Even the churches don't want to hear his words. "Oh no, don't preach that part in church."
- "That part might offend someone. Let's skip over that part. Let's skip over most of the Bible."
- That's called not wanting to hear his words. Let's see what the warning is in the LAW OF MOSES.

**[24] Leviticus 26:14-15** *But if ye will not hearken unto me, and will not do all these commandments; 15 And if ye shall despise my statutes, or if your soul abhor my judgments, so that ye will not do all my commandments, but that ye break my covenant:*

**[25] Leviticus 26:16** *I also will do this unto you; I will even appoint over you terror, consumption, and the burning ague, that shall consume the eyes, and cause sorrow of heart: and ye shall sow your seed in vain, for your enemies shall eat it.*

- Ague right there means chill, shaking with cold, the cold shivering before a fever.
- You don't want to hearken unto God? God says all of these things will happen.
- This was a long time before the Book of Jeremiah and the Book of Daniel. The warning is to us too.

**[26] Leviticus 26:17-18** *And I will set my face against you, and ye shall be slain before your enemies: they that hate you shall reign over you; and ye shall flee when none pursueth you. 18 And if ye will not yet for all this hearken unto me, then I will punish you seven times more for your sins.*

- God gives a punishment. If that still doesn't work, he says I'll punish you seven more times.
- And then the preachers today say, "Oh God would never punish you. God forbid." That's what they say.
- They also say, "Oh, well that's the Old Testament." Oh no, God will punish you because he says so.

**[27] Leviticus 26:19-20** *And I will break the pride of your power; and I will make your heaven as iron, and your earth as brass: 20 And your strength shall be spent in vain: for your land shall not yield her increase, neither shall the trees of the land yield their fruits.*

**[28] Leviticus 26:21-22** *And if ye walk contrary unto me, and will not hearken unto me; I will bring seven times more plagues upon you according to your sins. 22 I will also send wild beasts among you, which shall rob you of your children, and destroy your cattle, and make you few in number; and your high ways shall be desolate.*

**[29] Leviticus 26:23-25** *And if ye will not be reformed by me by these things, but will walk contrary unto me; 24 Then will I also walk contrary unto you, and will punish you yet seven times for your sins. 25 And I will bring a sword upon you, that shall avenge the quarrel of my covenant: and when ye are gathered together within your cities, I will send the pestilence among you; and ye shall be delivered into the hand of the enemy.*

**[30] Leviticus 26:26-27** *And when I have broken the staff of your bread, ten women shall bake your bread in one oven, and they shall deliver you your bread again by weight: and ye shall eat, and not be satisfied. 27 And if ye will not for all this hearken unto me, but walk contrary unto me;*

**[31] Leviticus 26:28-29** *Then I will walk contrary unto you also in fury; and I, even I, will chastise you seven times for your sins. 29 And ye shall eat the flesh of your sons, and the flesh of your daughters shall ye eat.*

- Does God sound like he's playing? He gets angry when he gives eternal life, and we ignore him.

**[32] Leviticus 26:30-31** *And I will destroy your high places, and cut down your images, and cast your carcasses upon the carcasses of your idols, and my soul shall abhor you. 31 And I will make your cities waste, and bring your sanctuaries unto desolation, and I will not smell the savour of your sweet odours.*

**[33] Leviticus 26:32-33** *And I will bring the land into desolation: and your enemies which dwell therein shall be astonished at it. 33 And I will scatter you among the heathen, and will draw out a sword after you: and your land shall be desolate, and your cities waste.*

**[34] Leviticus 26:34-35** *Then shall the land enjoy her sabbaths, as long as it lieth desolate, and ye be in your enemies' land; even then shall the land rest, and enjoy her sabbaths. 35 As long as it lieth desolate it shall rest; because it did not rest in your sabbaths, when ye dwelt upon it.*

- And that's exactly what happened to Israel. Daniel studied Leviticus. Daniel studied Jeremiah.
- He sees that it's all happened right in front of him.
- But watch what God says next as I skip down a few verses in Leviticus Chapter 26.

**[35] Leviticus 26:40-41** *If they shall confess their iniquity, and the iniquity of their fathers, with their trespass which they trespassed against me, and that also they have walked contrary unto me; 41 And that I also have walked contrary unto them, and have brought them into the land of their enemies; if then their uncircumcised hearts be humbled, and they then accept of the punishment of their iniquity:*

**[36] Leviticus 26:42-43** *Then will I remember my covenant with Jacob, and also my covenant with Isaac, and also my covenant with Abraham will I remember; and I will remember the land. 43 The land also shall be left of them, and shall enjoy her sabbaths, while she lieth desolate without them: and they shall accept of the punishment of their iniquity: because, even because they despised my judgments, and because their soul abhorred my statutes.*

**[37] Leviticus 26:44** *And yet for all that, when they be in the land of their enemies, I will not cast them away, neither will I abhor them, to destroy them utterly, and to break my covenant with them: for I am the LORD their God.*

**[38] Leviticus 26:45-46** *But I will for their sakes remember the covenant of their ancestors, whom I brought forth out of the land of Egypt in the sight of the heathen, that I might be their God: I am the LORD. 46 These are the statutes and judgments and laws, which the LORD made between him and the children of Israel in mount Sinai by the hand of Moses.*

- Again, that's what's happening all throughout the Bible. God warns us over and over again.
- Daniel is confessing all of their sin to God, going to God, and pleading for his forgiveness.

**[39] Daniel 9:12** *And he hath confirmed his words, which he spake against us, and against our judges that judged us, by bringing upon us a great evil: for under the whole heaven hath not been done as hath been done upon Jerusalem.*

- So, all the evil in the world at that time and Jerusalem got more of God's wrath than anyone.
- In other words, when you understand God and then you go up against him, he won't be happy.
- He warned those people over and over and over again.
- God will punish his own people. He shows us that within the Bible. He tells us how he does things.

**[40] Daniel 9:13** *As it is written in the law of Moses, all this evil is come upon us: yet made we not our prayer before the LORD our God, that we might turn from our iniquities, and understand thy truth.*

- "It is written in the law of Moses, all this evil is come upon us." What is this evil?
- Read Deuteronomy Chapter 28. Let me read you a list of the evil that came upon them.
- Your work will be cursed. The food will be cursed. Your children will be cursed.
- All your increase will be cursed. When you come in and go out, you will be cursed.
- He will curse you until you're destroyed. Pestilence or sickness. Fever. Inflammation.
- Extreme burning. Violence. Explosions. Mold and mildew. Rotting.

It will be difficult to grow food in the earth. He'll take the rain away. You'll lose to your enemies.

- You'll run and hide and be scared of your enemies. Your body will be meat for the birds.
- You'll get the botch which is ulcers and swelling. Emorods or hemorrhoids.
- Scabs and itching. You won't be healed from any of those things. MADNESS and blindness.
- You'll go crazy. You'll be astonished within your heart at what has happened.
- You'll be oppressed and spoiled. No man shall save thee.
- You'll get married and someone else will take your spouse. You'll build a house and you won't live there.
- You'll plant a garden and get nothing from it. Your livestock will be slain. You won't eat of your own food.

Your food will be given to your enemies. No one will rescue you.

- Your sons and daughters will be given to someone else.
- You will look for your children all day and night and will not find them.
- You will have no strength in your hands. Someone else will take all the fruit of your labor.
- You will be oppressed and CRUSHED always the Bible says. You'll be angry at your own eyes for seeing.
- The Lord will smite you in your knees and in your legs.

He'll give you a soreness that cannot be healed from your feet to the top of your head.

- God will give you over into the hands of another nation who your family has never known.
- You'll serve other gods instead of the one true God. You'll serve wood and stone gods.
- You'll become an astonishment, a proverb, a byword among the nations God sends you to.
- They'll say, "Wow, look at that man or woman. What did they do wrong? I feel sorry for them."
- You'll work harder than anyone else and get paid less than anyone.
- The insects will eat up all your crops and food. The worms will eat your food.

You'll have sons and daughters but you will never enjoy them. They will go into captivity.

- That sure sounds like today. Families can't even sit down together, eat a meal, and talk to each other.
- Strangers will be brought high, and you'll be brought very low.
- Strangers will lend money to you and not you to them. Strangers will be the head. You'll be the tail.
- Hunger, thirst, nakedness, and want of all things. People will conquer you from another land.
- Your family will be evil to one another. Children will hate their parents. Parents will hate their children.
- Parents will eat their children. Now that's sick. You will be left few in number.

***[41] Deuteronomy 28:63 And it shall come to pass, that as the LORD rejoiced over you to do you good, and to multiply you; so the LORD will rejoice over you to destroy you, and to bring you to nought; and ye shall be plucked from off the land whither thou goest to possess it.***

- So you can say evil things about God if you want, but you better get ready for that evil coming upon you.
- God is coming for you. That's what the Bible is teaching us today. You want to reject God? Get ready.
- And God will rejoice as he destroys you and brings you to nothing. That's what the Bible says.
- Nothing will be easy for you. Your feet shall not rest. Your heart will tremble. Your eyes will fail.
- You will be sorrowful at all times. Your life will be in doubt before you at all times.
- You won't just be fearful at night but you'll fear the day too. You will have no assurance of life.
- You'll hate the morning. You'll hate the night. You don't want any of this. So let's get back to God.
- This is what Daniel is talking about. And it's already happened to his people. And it can happen to us.

***[42] Daniel 9:14 Therefore hath the LORD watched upon the evil, and brought it upon us: for the LORD our God is righteous in all his works which he doeth: for we obeyed not his voice.***

- If you don't want to obey God's voice, all of that evil that you might not think is fair, IS FAIR.
- It's perfectly fair. God gave you life, and you want to go up against the ALMIGHTY GOD?
- God is righteous in all his works. Whatever he does to you, you should rejoice.
- You should turn back to him as fast as you can. Obey his voice. Read the Bible so you know what to do.

***[43] Daniel 9:15 And now, O Lord our God, that hast brought thy people forth out of the land of Egypt with a mighty hand, and hast gotten thee renown, as at this day; we have sinned, we have done wickedly.***

- God brought his people out of Egypt. That's a picture of salvation.
- If you've believed on the Lord Jesus Christ, you're saved. And yet we've sinned and done wicked things.

**[44] Daniel 9:16** *O Lord, according to all thy righteousness, I beseech thee, let thine anger and thy fury be turned away from thy city Jerusalem, thy holy mountain: because for our sins, and for the iniquities of our fathers, Jerusalem and thy people are become a reproach to all that are about us.*

- In your prayers, you better be praying for this country.
- We're in trouble and got hasn't made us desolate yet. We still have a chance to turn back.
- But we sure aren't headed that way.
- We're holding onto a little string while we hang off the side of a mountain.
- There's the few in this country who are working hard for God and trying to climb up that string.
- Ask God to please turn his fury away from us just as Daniel asks right there.

**[45] Daniel 9:17** *Now therefore, O our God, hear the prayer of thy servant, and his supplications, and cause thy face to shine upon thy sanctuary that is desolate, for the Lord's sake.*

- Ask God exactly what Daniel asks right here. Please hear our prayers. Please hear our supplications.
- Please cause your face to shine upon us here for your sake, O God. Why is it for his sake?
- Let's keep reading and we'll find out in a couple of verses.

**[46] Daniel 9:18-19** *O my God, incline thine ear, and hear; open thine eyes, and behold our desolations, and the city which is called by thy name: for we do not present our supplications before thee for our righteousnesses, but for thy great mercies. 19 O Lord, hear; O Lord, forgive; O Lord, hearken and do; defer not, for thine own sake, O my God: for thy city and thy people are called by thy name.*

- We ask God to hear us not because of what we've done but because he is merciful.
- We ask him to be merciful upon us for his sake because we are called by his name.
- We represent God Almighty as saved people, and we don't want to become desolate for his sake.
- We don't have righteousness of our own. I sure don't. Our only righteousness is through God.

**[47] Daniel 9:20** *And whiles I was speaking, and praying, and confessing my sin and the sin of my people Israel, and presenting my supplication before the LORD my God for the holy mountain of my God;*

- While Daniel is praying before God, something happens next from God.
- If you want something to happen in your life, maybe you should get in your closet and pray more.

**[48] Daniel 9:21** *Yea, whiles I was speaking in prayer, even the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly swiftly, touched me about the time of the evening oblation.*

- The angel Gabriel shows up. The same one Daniel saw in his vision. He flies over to Daniel swiftly.
- He does this at about the time of the evening oblation or sacrifice.
- This tells me that they're still offering the sacrifices. And this is the first year of Darius the Mede.
- Remember, Antiochus Epiphanes takes away the daily sacrifice and this is later with the Grecians.

**[49] Daniel 9:22** *And he informed me, and talked with me, and said, O Daniel, I am now come forth to give thee skill and understanding.*

- Would this have happened if Daniel was reading the Bible, studying the Bible, praying, fasting, asking God for help? Asking God forgiveness?
- Daniel is asking God for wisdom, understanding, forgiveness. And then this happens.
- Gabriel shows up to minister to Daniel and to help him. Sent from God Almighty.

***[50] Daniel 9:23 At the beginning of thy supplications the commandment came forth, and I am come to shew thee; for thou art greatly beloved: therefore understand the matter, and consider the vision.***

- As soon as Daniel started to pray, he was heard in heaven. Do you hear that today?
- If you work hard for God, if you truly want what God wants, you're heard in heaven.
- When you go to your closet and pray, God hears you in heaven. IN HEAVEN you are heard!!!
- As soon as Daniel started to pray, God heard him and the COMMANDMENT from God came forth.
- "GABRIEL, GO TO MY BELOVED DANIEL AND HELP HIM."

Gabriel says to Daniel, "That's why I'm here. God commanded me to come help you."

- Gabriel says, "Daniel I'm here because you are GREATLY LOVED BY GOD ALMIGHTY."
- When you work for God and do what he asks, he loves you more and more.
- Don't you want to hear that too directly from God? "I love you greatly."
- You should want to hear that. You should want to be like Daniel.
- God is going to give Daniel understanding because Daniel wants it and God greatly loves Daniel.
- Now, let's get this understanding too. Don't you want to understand? Let's ask God for understanding.

***[51] Daniel 9:24 Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy.***

- SEVENTY WEEKS are determined upon thy people and thy holy city.
- There will be 70 weeks to finish the transgression. This is iniquity and sin against God.
- During the 70 weeks and end of sins will happen. Who is the end to sin? JESUS CHRIST.
- At the end of the 70 weeks, the transgression will be finished. Jesus will then rule and reign.
- Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week, not all 70 weeks but only the final week of the 70, is what we've studied in Revelation.
- But right here, we learn that there are a total of 70 weeks to finish the transgression.
- At the end of the 70 weeks, it's finished. That's what SEAL UP the vision means. It's done.
- The MOST HOLY will be anointed ruler on this earth as it says right there at the end of verse 24.

***[52] Daniel 9:25 Know therefore and understand, that from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto the Messiah the Prince shall be seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks: the street shall be built again, and the wall, even in troublous times.***

- When the commandment is given to restore and build Jerusalem, the 70 week timer begins.
- We know that Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week in Revelation is 7 years. We see half of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week is 42 months.
- 42 months is 3-1/2 years. If half of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week is 3-1/2 years then the 70<sup>th</sup> week is 7 years.
- If the 70<sup>th</sup> week is 7 years, the entire 70 weeks will be 70x7 or 490 years.
- So, to understand Daniel, we use the light of Revelation. That's why we finished Revelation first.
- The Book of Daniel is much more difficult to understand. With Revelation, though, it's easier.



If we look close at verse 25, we'll see that restoring and rebuilding Jerusalem will take 7 weeks or 49 years.

- Remember, week is a period of 7 days. So one week in prophecy meaning 7 years is not a stretch.
- Even in the Webster's 1828 dictionary, we see a prophetic "WEEK" is a period of 7 years.
- Once the command to rebuild Jerusalem is given, the 7 week timer to rebuild begins.
- So, we look for this command within the Bible. We go to the very first verse in the Book of Ezra.
- Chronologically, the Book of Ezra happens AFTER Daniel Chapter 9.
- Remember, when we get to the prophets, we go back in time and move forward again from there.

**[53] Ezra 1:1-2** *Now in the first year of Cyrus king of Persia, that the word of the LORD by the mouth of Jeremiah might be fulfilled, the LORD stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and put it also in writing, saying, 2 Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia, The LORD God of heaven hath given me all the kingdoms of the earth; and he hath charged me to build him an house at Jerusalem, which is in Judah.*

- Within the books of Ezra and Nehemiah, we see Jerusalem being rebuilt.
- This was going to happen AFTER the 70 years when the Medes and Persians conquer Babylon.
- I don't know the exact timeline of rebuilding but God said it will take 7 weeks or 49 years.
- There were times when the rebuilding was halted. But Daniel says 7 weeks or 49 years.

**[54] John 2:18-20** *Then answered the Jews and said unto him, What sign shewest thou unto us, seeing that thou doest these things? 19 Jesus answered and said unto them, Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up. 20 Then said the Jews, Forty and six years was this temple in building, and wilt thou rear it up in three days?*

- Right there we see that the actual building of the temple took 46 years according the Jews in John 2.
- But remember, the 7 weeks or 49 years started on the command to rebuild Jerusalem.
- In Daniel 9:25 we see a period of 7 weeks and then another period of 69 weeks.
- By the end of the 69 weeks, the MESSIAH will be here the Bible says.
- And this is talking about HIS FIRST COMING. During the next 62 weeks or 434 years, the CHRIST is here.

We have 7 weeks or 49 years, then we have a gap of time, then we have another 62 weeks or 434 years.

- Then we have another gap of time, and then the final 70<sup>th</sup> week will be here.
- In total, the 70 weeks are not completed in exact order of time.
- We know because Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week hasn't come. We know there's a gap of time between 3 periods.

**[55]**

First Period	Second Period	Final Period	Total
7 Weeks	62 Weeks	1 Week	70 Weeks
49 Years	434 Years	7 Years	490 Years
Rebuild Jerusalem	Unto the Messiah	The End	Transgression Complete

- So, look, I didn't make up the gaps between each of these periods. GOD PUT THEM THERE.
- This means no one could have predicted when any of these things were going to happen.
- If there weren't any gaps in time, the rapture would have already happened.
- The tribulation would have already happened. I didn't make up the gaps. Let's read the Bible again.



***[56] Daniel 9:25-26 Know therefore and understand, that from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto the Messiah the Prince shall be seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks: the street shall be built again, and the wall, even in troublous times. 26 And after threescore and two weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary; and the end thereof shall be with a flood, and unto the end of the war desolations are determined.***

- We see the 7 weeks to restore and rebuild Jerusalem. This already happened.
- There was a gap of time after the 7<sup>th</sup> week was finished.
- Then we see THREESCORE and TWO which is 62 weeks. The street and wall will be rebuilt.
- And this happened in troubling times. Read the books of Ezra and Nehemiah, and you'll see.
- Zechariah and Haggai also give us details about the trouble they had rebuilding.
- They had lots of trouble. Verse 26 tells us more about the 62 week period of time.
- If it were just 69 straight weeks, the Bible wouldn't have split them into two periods of time.

After the 62 weeks, the MESSIAH shall be cut off, but not for himself.

- Jesus Christ comes to earth and is killed on the cross. He willingly gives himself as the sacrifice for our sins.
- He didn't do it for himself. Daniel 9:26 says so. The rest of the Bible says so. He did it for you and I.

***[57] Isaiah 53:8 He was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation? for he was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken.***

- Jesus came to Earth when the Romans were ruling and reigning.
- In AD 70, the Romans completely destroyed the city and the sanctuary. Daniel 9:26 says:
- "And the people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary."
- The people when Jesus came who ruled were the Romans and the Romans destroyed Jerusalem in AD 70.
- The prince of the Romans or Emperor was named Vespasian when they destroyed Jerusalem once again.

***[58]***

- That's what Vespasian looked like. He was the leader when the temple was destroyed in AD 70.
- There wasn't an actual flood but there was a FLOOD of soldiers and destruction like a flood.
- Jesus even prophesies about this happening when he's here on Earth.

***[59] Matthew 24:1-2 And Jesus went out, and departed from the temple: and his disciples came to him for to shew him the buildings of the temple. 2 And Jesus said unto them, See ye not all these things? verily I say unto you, There shall not be left here one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down.***

- It was fast and quick like a flood of water. It's there, it causes great destruction, it's gone.
- Matthew 24, Mark 13, Luke 21 talks about this same destruction from Daniel Chapter 9.
- I want you to notice something in verse 26 of Daniel Chapter 9 after the last comma.
- It says, "unto the end of the war desolations are determined." There is a war.
- When did the war between the Jews and Romans begin? 66 AD. It's called the Jewish-Roman War.
- It's the very first one. Guess when it ends? 7 years later in 73 AD.
- In the midst of the war, the temple is destroyed. The daily sacrifice is taken away at that time.

Isn't that pretty amazing with what we know about Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week?

- Remember, the antichrist comes into the temple at the Abomination of Desolation and stops the sacrifice.
- The Roman-Jewish war lasting 7 years and the temple being destroyed in the middle of the war is not a coincidence. It makes perfect sense with the rest of the Bible. It actually happened.
- I hope you're beginning to see how amazing the Bible truly is.
- Remember, the Book of Daniel was written long before any of that happened.
- The Book of Revelation was written long before any of that has happened. But, it's going to happen.

We've already seen a picture of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week in 66 AD to 73 AD.

- There was a gap between the 69<sup>th</sup> and 70<sup>th</sup> week. When Jesus died, the 69<sup>th</sup> week was over.
- The next verse and final verse in Daniel Chapter 9 gives us more detail about the 70<sup>th</sup> week.

***[60] Daniel 9:27 And he shall confirm the covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations he shall make it desolate, even until the consummation, and that determined shall be poured upon the desolate.***

- If we didn't have the Book of Revelation, we might think all of this is done because it actually happened.
- These things have already happened. But, we know there's going to be a future fulfillment of these things.
- Jesus Christ didn't come in the clouds in AD 70. The Book of Revelation includes FUTURE EVENTS.
- "And he shall confirm the covenant with many for one week." This is talking about the prince in verse 26.
- This was Vespasian the Roman Emperor, but this is talking about the antichrist in the future.

When the antichrist confirms this covenant, Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week, the future fulfillment of it BEGINS!!!

- The first part of that is the tribulation. In the midst of the week or middle of the 7-year period, the abomination of desolation takes place.
- The daily sacrifice and oblation or offering will cease. The antichrist will make it desolate once again.
- And he does that until the consummation or until the end of the 70<sup>th</sup> week.
- God's wrath is poured out after the second coming of Jesus Christ in the clouds at the rapture.
- "And that determined shall be poured upon the desolate."

Let's pray.

## SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 10

[2] The title of the sermon today is "DANIEL CHAPTER 10."

- As always, I'll do a quick summary of the last Chapter before we move into Daniel Chapter 10.
- In Daniel Chapter 9, we see Daniel in the first year of King Darius the Mede.
- We see Daniel reading and studying the book of Jeremiah.
- From Jeremiah, we see that after 70 years of desolation Jerusalem would be rebuilt.
- Daniel knows that the time is near for this to happen. So, what does Daniel do?

He goes to the Lord in prayer, supplication, fasting, sackcloth, and ashes.

- Daniel asks forgiveness for all his people who have sinned against God.
- Job also did that for his sons and daughters. When you pray, do you just pray for yourself?
- Hopefully not. Daniel is teaching us here how prayer and fasting should work.
- He's asking forgiveness not only for himself but for all the children of Israel.

***[3] Daniel 9:17 Now therefore, O our God, hear the prayer of thy servant, and his supplications, and cause thy face to shine upon thy sanctuary that is desolate, for the Lord's sake.***

- Daniel is asking this also for the Lord's sake because they are his people.
- And Daniel asks God to please forgive them not because of their righteousness but because of his mercy.
- We're so happy we have a merciful God. He's merciful to us when we don't deserve it at all.
- We see how important praying is to God. There is a spiritual war going on and praying is a part of it.
- While Daniel is praying to God and confessing the sin of his people Israel, Gabriel shows up.
- Daniel had seen this Gabriel during a vision he had in Daniel Chapter 8 years ago.

***[4] Daniel 9:21-22 Yea, whiles I was speaking in prayer, even the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly swiftly, touched me about the time of the evening oblation. 22 And he informed me, and talked with me, and said, O Daniel, I am now come forth to give thee skill and understanding.***

- Gabriel comes to give Daniel skill and understanding. He's going to tell Daniel what happens in the future.
- We learned about the 70 weeks and how those 70 weeks are split up into 3 periods of time.
- 7 weeks is the first period. 62 weeks is the second period. And 1 week is Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week.
- 7 weeks to restore and rebuild Jerusalem. Another 62 weeks until the Messiah is cut off.
- And then 1 week to finish and complete the transgression against God.

We learned how these things already happened, but they will happen again.

- We know Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week will happen again because we have the Book of Revelation.
- We learned about the 7 year Jewish-Roman War from 66 AD to 73 AD.
- In 70 AD, in the midst of the war, Jerusalem is conquered and made desolate by Vespasian.
- He was the Emperor of Rome at that time. He causes the daily sacrifice to stop.
- We know he is a picture of the antichrist. We know there's many different antichrists, but he's one.

***[5] 1 John 2:18 Little children, it is the last time: and as ye have heard that antichrist shall come, even now are there many antichrists; whereby we know that it is the last time.***

**[6] 1 John 2:22** *Who is a liar but he that denieth that Jesus is the Christ? He is antichrist, that denieth the Father and the Son.*

**[7] 2 John 7** *For many deceivers are entered into the world, who confess not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh. This is a deceiver and an antichrist.*

- We saw the King of Greece Antiochus (AN-TY-O-CHUS) Epiphanes as a picture of the antichrist.
- He stopped the daily sacrifice long before Vespasian. We saw Jerusalem is rebuilt in Ezra and Nehemiah.
- And now Vespasian comes along and conquers Jerusalem and stops the daily sacrifice.
- The antichrist or the beast from Revelation will do the same. He will stop the daily sacrifice.
- And remember, JESUS CHRIST is the LAMB OF GOD who is our sacrifice.
- The antichrist will act as if he is God. That's what these antichrists do and the antichrist will do the same.
- He will do miracles and people will follow after him thinking he is the savior.
- Let's start there in verse 1 of Daniel Chapter 10.

**[8] Daniel 10:1** *In the third year of Cyrus king of Persia a thing was revealed unto Daniel, whose name was called Belteshazzar; and the thing was true, but the time appointed was long: and he understood the thing, and had understanding of the vision.*

- Now, we're in the THIRD YEAR of Cyrus King of Persia. We're in Daniel Chapter 10.
- Let's do a quick timeline of the Book of Daniel and when each chapter happens.
- We see 5 different kings in the timeline of the Book of Daniel.
- 1) Jehoiakim King of Judah, 2) Nebuchadnezzar King of Babylon, 3) Belshazzar King of Babylon
- 4) Darius King of Media, and 5) Cyrus King of Persia

Daniel Chapter 1 is the 3<sup>rd</sup> Year of Jehoiakim King of Judah.

- Daniel Chapter 2 starts with the 2<sup>nd</sup> year of Nebuchadnezzar King of Babylon.
- Daniel Chapter 3 and 4 continue during the reign of King Nebuchadnezzar.
- Daniel Chapter 5 is the last year of Belshazzar King of Babylon.
- Daniel Chapter 6 is the 1<sup>st</sup> year of Darius King of the Medes.
- Then, we see the Book of Daniel go back in time starting in Daniel Chapter 7.
- This is similar to the Book of Revelation being cut in half. Revelation 1 – 11 and 12 – 22.
- Daniel 1 – 6 and 7 – 12. Now, let's see the order of Daniel Chapters 7 through 12.

Daniel Chapter 7 is the 1<sup>st</sup> year of King Belshazzar. So this goes back before Daniel Chapter 5.

- Daniel Chapter 5 is the last year of King Belshazzar and Daniel Chapter 7 is the 1<sup>st</sup> year of this king.
- Daniel Chapter 8 is the 3<sup>rd</sup> year of Belshazzar King of Babylon so that happens before Daniel Chapter 5.
- Daniel Chapter 9 is the 1<sup>st</sup> year of Darius King of the Medes. Daniel Chapter 10 also jumps forward in time.
- Daniel Chapter 10 is the 3<sup>rd</sup> year of Cyrus King of Persia. That's we are right now.
- Daniel Chapters 11 and 12 go back to the 1<sup>st</sup> year of Darius King of Media but continue from Chapter 10.
- In chronological order, the Book of Daniel goes like this:
- Daniel Chapters 1, 2, 3, 4, 7, 8, 5, 6, 9, 10, 11, 12.
- So, today, we're going over the Daniel Chapter 10. And these last 3 chapters go together.

***[9] Daniel 10:1 In the third year of Cyrus king of Persia a thing was revealed unto Daniel, whose name was called Belteshazzar; and the thing was true, but the time appointed was long: and he understood the thing, and had understanding of the vision.***

- Daniel has understanding of the vision, but it's not going to happen for a long time.
- Daniel Chapter 10 is an introduction to Daniel Chapter 11, which is very detailed and difficult.
- Daniel Chapter 12 is the ending of this vision. So, Chapter 10 introduction. Chapter 11 is the details.
- Chapter 12 is the ending. And remember, God didn't give Daniel these things in order.
- Daniel received Chapter 11 and 12 before he received Daniel Chapter 10.
- When he received Chapter 10 during the reign of Cyrus King of Persia, he understood all.
- Daniel went after understanding with all that he had. God doesn't just give it to anyone.
- Daniel studied, prayed, fasted, and asked God for understanding. And God found him worthy.

***[10] Luke 11:9 And I say unto you, Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.***

***[11] John 16:24 Hitherto have ye asked nothing in my name: ask, and ye shall receive, that your joy may be full.***

***[12] Matthew 5:6 Blessed are they which do hunger and thirst after righteousness: for they shall be filled.***

- The Book of Daniel is not easy. If you want to understand, ask God for that understanding.
- Read the Book of Daniel over and over again. You can read it in about an hour.
- At normal speed, you can listen to the audio Bible on our website in about an hour.
- Look, the Book of Daniel, especially Chapters 10, 11, and 12 are spiritual meat.
- Watch what Daniel did so he could understand. He prayed and fasted.

***[13] Daniel 10:2-3 In those days I Daniel was mourning three full weeks. 3 I ate no pleasant bread, neither came flesh nor wine in my mouth, neither did I anoint myself at all, till three whole weeks were fulfilled.***

- Daniel took 3 full weeks and mourned or grieved before God Almighty. He wanted to understand.
- He didn't eat anything pleasant. He didn't eat any meat. He knew the word of God is the meat.
- He didn't drink any wine or fruit juice. He didn't wash, trim his beard, or anoint his head.
- He mourned in front of God. In today's world, we wouldn't be caught dead doing anything like that.
- Why? Because it's not fun. We need fun. We need happiness all the time. We wouldn't dare mourn.

***[14] Ecclesiastes 3:1-4 To every thing there is a season, and a time to every purpose under the heaven: 2 A time to be born, and a time to die; a time to plant, and a time to pluck up that which is planted; 3 A time to kill, and a time to heal; a time to break down, and a time to build up; 4 A time to weep, and a time to laugh; a time to mourn, and a time to dance;***

***[15] Ecclesiastes 3:5-8 A time to cast away stones, and a time to gather stones together; a time to embrace, and a time to refrain from embracing; 6 A time to get, and a time to lose; a time to keep, and a time to cast away; 7 A time to rend, and a time to sew; a time to keep silence, and a time to speak; 8 A time to love, and a time to hate; a time of war, and a time of peace.***

- So, there is a time to mourn and a time to dance. The opposite of mourning is dancing.

**[16] James 4:8-10 Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you. Cleanse your hands, ye sinners; and purify your hearts, ye double minded. 9 Be afflicted, and mourn, and weep: let your laughter be turned to mourning, and your joy to heaviness. 10 Humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord, and he shall lift you up.**

- During mourning, you don't make yourself happy with anything. Humble yourself before God.
- If you do, God will lift you up. Doesn't that sound good? GOD WILL LIFT YOU UP!!!
- Daniel did this for 3 weeks. God sees what you're doing. You don't need to do it in front of others.

**[17] Daniel 10:4 And in the four and twentieth day of the first month, as I was by the side of the great river, which is Hiddekel;**

- Daniel is there on 1/24. Remember, in the first month there is the Passover on the 14<sup>th</sup>.
- The days of unleavened bread are 7 days following the Passover. So Daniel is past those feasts.
- It appears that Daniel fasted through the Passover and days of unleavened bread.
- The Jews may have not been keeping the feasts at that time. That's just a note to think about.
- But mourning and fasting is called denying your flesh. You don't have to make your flesh happy.
- And it's something voluntary. God doesn't command you to do it. If you want, you do it.
- And Daniel is doing this because he wants to. No one made him do it. He wants understanding that bad.
- Daniel is standing beside the great river Hiddekel. This river is only mentioned one other time in the Bible.

**[18] Genesis 2:14 And the name of the third river is Hiddekel: that is it which goeth toward the east of Assyria. And the fourth river is Euphrates.**

- The Hiddekel River is one of the 4 river heads that came out of the garden of Eden.
- Hiddekel is the current day Tigris River in Iraq and this makes sense.
- The word Hiddekel means sharp and swift, which makes sense with Tigris which means dart.
- As we continue, remember that Daniel is standing by this great river.

**[19] Daniel 10:5-6 Then I lifted up mine eyes, and looked, and behold a certain man clothed in linen, whose loins were girded with fine gold of Uphaz: 6 His body also was like the beryl, and his face as the appearance of lightning, and his eyes as lamps of fire, and his arms and his feet like in colour to polished brass, and the voice of his words like the voice of a multitude.**

- Daniel looks up and sees this man. He has linen and his loins are girded with fine gold. Imagine that.
- His body is like a precious stone. His face is like lightning. His eyes as lamps of fire.
- His arms and feet are like polished brass. And when he spoke, you knew it. His voice is like a multitude.

This reminds me of the differences in a MAN and a WOMAN. With our children, Pam can tell them:

- "Hey, don't do that." And it doesn't come with much power behind it. But when I say:
- "HEY, DON'T DO THAT!!!" They straighten up because they hear the power behind my voice.
- That's why God gave us men and women. The women are more delicate as they were designed to be.
- The men were made with more strength and power as they were designed to be.
- And the men in today's world need to wake up and be the men God designed them to be.
- STOP BEING FEMININE. Put the Hollywood influences away and be a man. Go do some physical work.

And stop worrying how pretty you are. BE A MAN. You see this strength in our Lord Jesus Christ.

- You see this STRENGTH right here in Daniel Chapter 10. You see that this man strikes fear in people.
- As a man, we are no where near the Lord Jesus Christ but we are made in HIS IMAGE.
- So, wake up, be a MAN because you're made in the image of GOD. Act like it.
- His face was like lightning. LIGHTNING is scary and shocking. Do you understand that?
- You better fear our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ. He doesn't have long hair, and he doesn't wear a dress.

***[20] Psalm 33:6-9 By the word of the LORD were the heavens made; and all the host of them by the breath of his mouth. 7 He gathereth the waters of the sea together as an heap: he layeth up the depth in storehouses. 8 Let all the earth fear the LORD: let all the inhabitants of the world stand in awe of him. 9 For he spake, and it was done; he commanded, and it stood fast.***

- If you read the Bible cover to cover, again and again, you will not think God is a pushover.
- When I get back into the world, I start to take things a little easier. "Oh, it's okay if you do this."
- "Oh, it's okay if you do that." Then read the Bible. It's not okay. God is fearful. His voice is like thunders.
- GREAT THUNDERS!!! His face is like lightning. His eyes are like flames. You should be scared.
- I was scared recently when I was on a plane, and I realized how small I am. I felt like a little ant.
- And that ant was being thrown around like nothing. That's when you realize how BIG GOD is.
- That's when you go to God. That's what you do when you're truly scared. And you hope God answers.

***[21] Proverbs 1:24-26 Because I have called, and ye refused; I have stretched out my hand, and no man regarded; 25 But ye have set at nought all my counsel, and would none of my reproof: 26 I also will laugh at your calamity; I will mock when your fear cometh;***

***[22] Proverbs 1:27-29 When your fear cometh as desolation, and your destruction cometh as a whirlwind; when distress and anguish cometh upon you. 28 Then shall they call upon me, but I will not answer; they shall seek me early, but they shall not find me: 29 For that they hated knowledge, and did not choose the fear of the LORD:***

***[23] Proverbs 1:30-32 They would none of my counsel: they despised all my reproof. 31 Therefore shall they eat of the fruit of their own way, and be filled with their own devices. 32 For the turning away of the simple shall slay them, and the prosperity of fools shall destroy them.***

- Let's not be fools any more. We need understand who God is and FEAR HIM with all that we have.
- He's here right now, and you don't want to mess with him. He's not easy going. He's FIERCE.

***[24] Daniel 10:7 And I Daniel alone saw the vision: for the men that were with me saw not the vision; but a great quaking fell upon them, so that they fled to hide themselves.***

- There were other men around when Daniel saw this vision. They didn't see it.
- A great quaking fell upon them. They ran and hid. When a great earthquake comes, you'll do the same.
- I've felt one smaller earthquake in my life, 4.6 for about 10 seconds in California.
- And I could feel the power under me, and that was a small one. THAT'S GOD'S POWER!!!



**[25] Daniel 10:8 Therefore I was left alone, and saw this great vision, and there remained no strength in me: for my comeliness was turned in me into corruption, and I retained no strength.**

- Daniel lost all his strength. Do you understand God can take it all away any time he wants?

**[26] Daniel 10:9 Yet heard I the voice of his words: and when I heard the voice of his words, then was I in a deep sleep on my face, and my face toward the ground.**

- Again, we see Daniel straight on his face on the ground. That's what happens with God.
- We fear so much, we lose all our strength, and we fall to the ground.
- Daniel hears the voice of his words and is in a deep sleep on the ground.
- Have you ever had a dream where you can't move? You've lost all your strength? I have.
- Once in my life, I laid in bed like I was asleep, was conscious, and couldn't move.
- It's scary. That's what I imagine when see this here in Daniel Chapter 9.

**[27] Daniel 10:10 And, behold, an hand touched me, which set me upon my knees and upon the palms of my hands.**

- No matter how tough we think we are and no matter how powerful we think we are:
- We are nothing compared to God's strength and power. We need him alone to lift us up.
- This man that Daniel sees is an angel from God, and you can see God's power with this angel.
- This hand touches Daniel, lifts him, and sets him upon his knees and on the palms of his hands.

**[28] Daniel 10:11 And he said unto me, O Daniel, a man greatly beloved, understand the words that I speak unto thee, and stand upright: for unto thee am I now sent. And when he had spoken this word unto me, I stood trembling.**

- Wouldn't it be great to hear that you are GREATLY BELOVED by God?
- If you've believed on the Lord Jesus Christ to save you and him alone, you are beloved by God.
- Your goal in this life should be to please God. You should want to become GREATLY BELOVED BY GOD.
- If you're constantly doing your best to please God, you will be greatly beloved.

This man tells Daniel to stand upright and understand the words that he's saying.

- He says, "For unto thee am I now sent." Wouldn't that be amazing? GOD SENDS SOMEONE TO YOU.
- Yes, it would be amazing. And he did that already. God sent his son Jesus Christ to die for YOU.
- That means he must care about and love you if he sent his one and only son to die for you.
- And Jesus Christ, who is God, sacrificed himself for you because of his great love to you.
- Daniel hears his words, and he stands up. But he's trembling with fear. You would be too.

Everyday that we wake up, we should stand and tremble in fear of God. He's there.

- We should fear him so much that all we want to do each day is whatever he wants us to do.
- God is a fearful God, and he's not this false god who loves everyone no matter what they do.
- Oh no, he is not happy with us when we sin. He hates sin of all types. He's not happy with sin.
- He gets angry. And you'll see that when you read the Bible cover to cover and over and over again.

**[29] Numbers 25:3-5** *And Israel joined himself unto Baal-peor: and the anger of the LORD was kindled against Israel. 4 And the LORD said unto Moses, Take all the heads of the people, and hang them up before the LORD against the sun, that the fierce anger of the LORD may be turned away from Israel. 5 And Moses said unto the judges of Israel, Slay ye every one his men that were joined unto Baal-peor.*

- That's just one little example concerning fornication, whoredom, and worshipping false gods.
- GOD GETS ANGRY. He's not different now. He's the same God as he was right there in Numbers.
- "TAKE THE HEADS OF THE PEOPLE AND HANG THEM UP BEFORE THE LORD."
- Does that make you fear God or not? That's just one little example in the Bible. They're everywhere.
- This isn't a fairy tale either. That actually happened. 23,000 died that day (1 Cor 10).
- When we sin, we should tremble in fear of God. We should ask forgiveness immediately.

**[30] 1 John 1:9** *If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.*

- If you've believed on the Lord Jesus Christ, you're saved, BUT you still sin in your flesh. Not your soul.
- When you sin, you need to go to God and confess those sins. And tremble before him with fear.
- He can make your life on this earth a living hell because he is a good Father and he will punish you.
- If you continue to do things purposely when you know they're wrong, he's coming for you.
- Be like Daniel. Go to him in prayer and in fear. Tremble before him and humble yourself before God.
- When you do, you're showing God that you understand his greatness and what he can do.
- He holds your breath in his hands. Do not mess with God. Daniel stands there trembling in verse 11.

**[31] Daniel 10:12** *Then said he unto me, Fear not, Daniel: for from the first day that thou didst set thine heart to understand, and to chasten thyself before thy God, thy words were heard, and I am come for thy words.*

- This messenger or angel from God tells Daniel to FEAR NOT. Why shouldn't he fear?
- Because Daniel set his heart to understand the Bible, the Book of Jeremiah, and the visions from God.
- Daniel also CHASTENED himself before God. He punished himself before God. How did he do that?

**[32] Psalm 69:10** *When I wept, and chastened my soul with fasting, that was to my reproach.*

- Daniel did so with mourning and fasting. He wasn't pleasing himself with all the good things in life.
- He was sorry for his sins and for the sins of his people. He asked forgiveness.
- This angel tells Daniel that his words were heard. His prayers were heard. And for that, DO NOT FEAR.
- That angel could have been coming for Daniel to punish him, to take him out. You never know.

So the angel says, "Calm down Daniel. I'm here to help. I'm not here to hurt you."

- In verse 12, the angel tells Daniel that "you were heard from the FIRST DAY."
- It's taken a few days, but now I'm here. That's why we need to be patient when we wait for God's answer.
- It might take longer that we want, but I guarantee you he will answer when the time is perfect.
- But understand that Daniel didn't stop seeking God. He continued to seek God while he waited.
- God does all things perfectly. So, calm down, seek God, pray to God, ask God, and he will answer.
- There is a spiritual battle going in every day, and you can see this within Daniel Chapter 10.

**[33] Daniel 10:13 But the prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me one and twenty days: but, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me; and I remained there with the kings of Persia.**

- We see this prince of the kingdom of Persia withstanding the spiritual angel from God.
- So we see this is a spiritual battle between forces of light and forces of darkness.
- This prince of darkness within the kingdom of Persia withstood this same angel 21 days.

**[34] Ephesians 6:10-12 Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of his might. 11 Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. 12 For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.**

- Daniel Chapter 10 is giving us a perfect example of what Ephesians Chapter 6 is talking about.
- This angel is fighting against the dark prince of the kingdom of Persia.
- Satan himself is called the prince of the power of the air in Ephesians Chapter 2.
- This prince of the kingdom of Persia in Daniel 10:13 is an evil spirit or demon resisting the good angel.
- Now, let's read it again and see if this makes more sense.

**[35] Daniel 10:13 But the prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me one and twenty days: but, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me; and I remained there with the kings of Persia.**

- So, this isn't talking about the flesh and blood ruler of Persia. It's talking about a spiritual dark prince.
- And we don't know so much about the spiritual world because we can't see it. But it's there.
- We see MICHAEL, one of the CHIEF PRINCES on the good side, comes to help this angel.

**[36] Jude 9 Yet Michael the archangel, when contending with the devil he disputed about the body of Moses, durst not bring against him a railing accusation, but said, The Lord rebuke thee.**

- Michael is one of the chief princes or an archangel. He's a leader within the ranks of the angels.
- The angel that Daniel sees in Daniel Chapter 10 calls for backup from Michael the archangel.
- Michael comes to help this angel against the evil demon from the kingdom of Persia.
- And that angel remained there with the kings of Persia and ministering unto those kings spiritually.
- And yes, we have ministering spirits or angels all around us. We don't see the spiritual world.

**[37] Daniel 10:14-15 Now I am come to make thee understand what shall befall thy people in the latter days: for yet the vision is for many days. 15 And when he had spoken such words unto me, I set my face toward the ground, and I became dumb.**

- Daniel is standing there while the angel speaks with him. The angel comes to help Daniel understand.
- He's going to help him understand what will happen to God's people in the latter days.
- He tells Daniel that this vision won't come to pass for MANY DAYS.
- Daniel again sets his face to the ground and he became as dumb the Bible says.

**[38] Daniel 10:16 And, behold, one like the similitude of the sons of men touched my lips: then I opened my mouth, and spake, and said unto him that stood before me, O my lord, by the vision my sorrows are turned upon me, and I have retained no strength.**

- One that is like a man touched Daniel's lips so he would speak.
- Daniel speaks to this angel that stands before him. Because of the vision, Daniel is sorrowful.
- And he has no strength. The visions are very troubling to Daniel.

**[39] Daniel 10:17** *For how can the servant of this my lord talk with this my lord? for as for me, straightway there remained no strength in me, neither is there breath left in me.*

- Daniel is now saying, "How can someone who is a servant of the Lord talk to me?"
- Daniel is a very humble man who doesn't think highly of himself. He knows the greatness of God.
- He sees the greatness of God in this angel who is talking with him.
- Daniel lost all his strength, and he's having trouble breathing. He's in awe and shocked.
- This is the same Daniel who went up against kings. He went into the lion's den. He wasn't scared.
- So this should tell you how shocking one of these angels can be.
- And it should really tell you what's going to happen when you finally see the Lord Jesus Christ one day.

**[40] Revelation 1:12-14** *And I turned to see the voice that spake with me. And being turned, I saw seven golden candlesticks; 13 And in the midst of the seven candlesticks one like unto the Son of man, clothed with a garment down to the foot, and girt about the paps with a golden girdle. 14 His head and his hairs were white like wool, as white as snow; and his eyes were as a flame of fire;*

**[41] Revelation 1:15-17** *And his feet like unto fine brass, as if they burned in a furnace; and his voice as the sound of many waters. 16 And he had in his right hand seven stars: and out of his mouth went a sharp twoedged sword: and his countenance was as the sun shineth in his strength. 17 And when I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead. And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me, Fear not; I am the first and the last:*

- John sees Jesus in the Book of Revelation and falls at his feet AS DEAD. That's what's going to happen.
- We know the angel in Daniel isn't Jesus even though the description is similar.
- Why? Because this angel calls for backup from Michael. Jesus doesn't need backup.
- Jesus doesn't have a struggle with the powers of darkness. The angels battle each other.
- But Jesus Christ doesn't have an actual struggle with anyone or anything. He speaks and it's done.
- Yes, here on earth, he went through a lot because he was made a little lower than the angels.
- This was done on purpose so he could become the SAVIOR. He is God manifest in the flesh.
- So, we see Daniel is very scared of this angel because God sent him. He's shocked and in awe of this angel.

**[42] Daniel 10:18-19** *Then there came again and touched me one like the appearance of a man, and he strengthened me, 19 And said, O man greatly beloved, fear not: peace be unto thee, be strong, yea, be strong. And when he had spoken unto me, I was strengthened, and said, Let my lord speak; for thou hast strengthened me.*

- This angel who looks like a man touches Daniel and strengthens him again.
- But notice what he says, "Daniel you are a man who is greatly loved. Fear not!!! Peace be unto you."
- He tells Daniel to "BE STRONG!!! YEA, BE STRONG!!!" When he spoke, Daniel got his strength back.
- Daniel says, "Let my Lord speak for thou hast strengthened me."
- When we're scared and fearful, ask God for strength. He can give you that strength you need.

**[43] Psalm 138:3** *In the day when I cried thou answeredst me, and strengthenedst me with strength in my soul.*

- God strengthens you in your soul. If you've trusted on the Lord Jesus Christ, you're saved. It's over.
- Your soul is strengthened and saved with everlasting life. That should give you strength.
- When we're weak in our flesh, God can make us strong.

**[44] 2 Corinthians 12:7-9** *And lest I should be exalted above measure through the abundance of the revelations, there was given to me a thorn in the flesh, the messenger of Satan to buffet me, lest I should be exalted above measure. 8 For this thing I besought the Lord thrice, that it might depart from me. 9 And he said unto me, My grace is sufficient for thee: for my strength is made perfect in weakness. Most gladly therefore will I rather glory in my infirmities, that the power of Christ may rest upon me.*

- Paul was weak in the flesh. He prayed for boldness to God. He was fearful in his flesh.
- But God made him strong. Why? So he could preach with boldness.
- And remember, outside of church, we are all to be preachers of God's word.
- We are to share the Gospel with all no matter what. BE BOLD. Be not afraid. Ask God for strength.
- Yes, there is a spiritual battle. Allow God to take over so you win that battle.

**[45] Daniel 10:20** *Then said he, Knowest thou wherefore I come unto thee? and now will I return to fight with the prince of Persia: and when I am gone forth, lo, the prince of Grecia shall come.*

- He says, "Daniel, do you understand why I've come unto you?" He answers that in the next verse.
- But he also says, "I've got to go back and fight with this prince of Persia."
- He's going to go fight this spiritual battle with this ruler of darkness. There's always a battle going on.
- And I guarantee you that there are powers of darkness in the United States right now.
- And I guarantee you that God's angels are there battling in the United States right now.

This angel tells Daniel that when he goes forth, the prince of Grecia shall come.

- We know that the Grecians conquer the Persians. He's telling Daniel that they're next.
- He's got a battle to fight with the Persians and after the Persians it's the Grecians next.
- And then we know after the Grecians, we see the Romans and so on.
- And remember, Cyrus of Persia is king right now as Daniel lives during Daniel Chapter 10.
- Daniel knows that the Grecians are going to take over next because of the visions and this angel.

**[46] Daniel 10:21** *But I will shew thee that which is noted in the scripture of truth: and there is none that holdeth with me in these things, but Michael your prince.*

- This angel has come to show Daniel this revelation of the vision he has received.
- We're going to see this in Daniel Chapter 11. We'll see a very detailed vision.
- And Daniel Chapter 11 is probably one of the toughest chapters in the entire Bible.
- But Daniel understands it because of this angel who comes and visits Daniel in Daniel Chapter 10.
- And Daniel Chapter 12 is a continuance of this vision where we see more about the end times.
- We learn about the tribulation, and we're given the exact number of days for end time events.
- So, Michael the archangel and this angel is holding these things and fighting these dark powers.
- We know that Satan is behind all of these dark powers and demons who are deceiving the nations.
- Satan even tried to tempt Jesus by giving him power over the kingdoms of this world.

**[47] Luke 4:5-7** *And the devil, taking him up into an high mountain, shewed unto him all the kingdoms of the world in a moment of time. 6 And the devil said unto him, All this power will I give thee, and the glory of them: for that is delivered unto me; and to whomsoever I will I give it. 7 If thou therefore wilt worship me, all shall be thine.*

- Notice what Satan tells Jesus. When will he give him power over all the kingdoms?
- "IF THOU WILT THEREFORE WORSHIP ME." What's that tell you about many rulers in this world?
- I can guarantee that many of them have bowed down and worshipped Satan.
- When you choose anything over God, you are worshipping Satan. Don't put anything above God.
- Satan is behind all of these evil and wicked forces in our world today.
- He has spiritual forces and he has flesh and blood helping him today.
- We see that in the Book of Daniel, and we see God has good angels fighting back.
- They do this so that God's will is fulfilled. God always wins. Whatever he wants, happens.
- But Satan is always pushing back, but he'll never win. He should just give it up, but he won't.

In Daniel Chapter 11, we'll see this same angel telling Daniel that he strengthened Darius the Mede.

- Remember, Darius the Mede is the one who loved Daniel and was a friend of Daniel.
- Without this angel there strengthening him spiritually, that probably wouldn't have happened.

**[48] Daniel 11:1** *Also I in the first year of Darius the Mede, even I, stood to confirm and to strengthen him.*

- That angel is there strengthening Darius the Mede in his first year of reigning.
- Remember, Darius is the first king after Belshazzar of Babylon is conquered.
- This angel must know Daniel very well. He knows that God loves Daniel.
- He tells Daniel that God loves him over and over again.
- And this angel comes to give Daniel understanding.

**[49] Daniel 11:2** *And now will I shew thee the truth. Behold, there shall stand up yet three kings in Persia; and the fourth shall be far richer than they all: and by his strength through his riches he shall stir up all against the realm of Grecia.*

- Daniel Chapter 11 is a long chapter that we'll do next. We'll get all the details of Daniel's vision.
- Today, I hope you've seen the importance of prayer in the spiritual battle. There is a battle going on.
- First, you need to be saved. Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ to save you and that's it.
- Nothing else saves you. Believe that HE ALONE is the SAVIOR. You receive eternal life at that moment.
- That's a HUGE SPIRITUAL WIN right there. After that, you need to do your best to obey God.
- Read and study the Bible to understand God and to know what he wants. Increase your faith.
- You do that by reading and studying the Bible. You do that by coming to church and learning with us.
- Pray every day for as long as you need. You can't pray enough. Talk to God within all day long.
- Humble yourself before God. Learn to resist the flesh and all the things that you want.
- Give those things up. When you do, you're winning battles for God. You're making things easier for him.
- Let's not make it so hard on our amazing, fearful, and merciful God.

Let's pray.



## SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 11

[2] The title of the sermon today is "DANIEL CHAPTER 11."

- In Daniel Chapter 10, we saw an introduction to Daniel Chapter 11.
- We see that Daniel Chapter 10 occurs during the 3<sup>rd</sup> year of King Cyrus of Persia.
- We saw an angel come to Daniel and let him know that God has heard his prayers from the beginning.
- We saw how fearful Daniel was of this angel, but the angel was there to help Daniel.

**[3] Daniel 10:12 *Then said he unto me, Fear not, Daniel: for from the first day that thou didst set thine heart to understand, and to chasten thyself before thy God, thy words were heard, and I am come for thy words.***

- This angel has been fighting the spiritual powers of darkness in the Kingdom of Persia.
- He's there to tell Daniel what the visions mean that Daniel has had.
- And with that, we're going to start there in verse 1 of Daniel Chapter 11.

**[4] Daniel 11:1 *Also I in the first year of Darius the Mede, even I, stood to confirm and to strengthen him.***

- When Daniel Chapter 10, 11, and 12 are happening, the king of Persia is the current king.
- Darius was the first king of the Median and Persian empire.
- So, we see that this angel was there with Darius in the first year that he took the kingdom of Babylon.
- Darius the Mede along with the Persians conquered the Babylonians. This angel strengthened him.
- And remember, Darius is the one that threw Daniel into the lion's den, but he was tricked into doing so.
- Darius actually loved Daniel, and Daniel was the top ruler in his kingdom.

**[5] Daniel 11:2 *And now will I shew thee the truth. Behold, there shall stand up yet three kings in Persia; and the fourth shall be far richer than they all: and by his strength through his riches he shall stir up all against the realm of Grecia.***

- Cyrus the great is the current King of Persia. "There shall stand up YET three kings in Persia."
- This means there's going to be 3 more Kings in Persia. So Cyrus is the first and then 3 more kings.
- The last or the fourth king is going to be far richer than all 4.
- By this 4<sup>th</sup> king's strength and riches, he will stir up the entire kingdom against Grecia.

So, who are the other 3 kings? We know the first is CYRUS THE GREAT.

- Daniel Chapter 10 tells us Cyrus is the current King. Where would we look first for the truth? The Bible.
- We see these other 3 kings that come after Cyrus in the books of Ezra, Nehemiah, and Esther.
- Those 3 books are back to back in the Bible. They are in order of when things actually happened.
- Let's look to Ezra for the names of the Kings of Persia.

**[6] Ezra 4:7 *And in the days of Artaxerxes wrote Bishlam, Mithredath, Tabeel, and the rest of their companions, unto Artaxerxes king of Persia; and the writing of the letter was written in the Syrian tongue, and interpreted in the Syrian tongue.***

- So far, Cyrus is the first king and Artaxerxes is the second king.



**[7] Ezra 4:24** *Then ceased the work of the house of God which is at Jerusalem. So it ceased unto the second year of the reign of Darius king of Persia.*

- Darius King of Persia is the name of the third king mentioned in Daniel Chapter 11.
- This is not Darius the Mede from Daniel Chapter 6. This Darius of Persia is long after Darius the Mede.
- We have 1) Cyrus, 2) Artaxerxes, 3) Darius, and let's find the name of the fourth who is very rich.

**[8] Ezra 4:6** *And in the reign of Ahasuerus, in the beginning of his reign, wrote they unto him an accusation against the inhabitants of Judah and Jerusalem.*

- Now we have the names of all 4 kings: 1) Cyrus, 2) Artaxerxes, 3) Darius, and 4) Ahasuerus.
- In Daniel 11 verse 2, the fourth king is "far richer than they all." Do you remember King Ahasuerus?

**[9] Esther 1:1-2** *Now it came to pass in the days of Ahasuerus, (this is Ahasuerus which reigned, from India even unto Ethiopia, over an hundred and seven and twenty provinces:) 2 That in those days, when the king Ahasuerus sat on the throne of his kingdom, which was in Shushan the palace,*

**[10] Esther 1:3-4** *In the third year of his reign, he made a feast unto all his princes and his servants; the power of Persia and Media, the nobles and princes of the provinces, being before him: 4 When he shewed the riches of his glorious kingdom and the honour of his excellent majesty many days, even an hundred and fourscore days.*

- He showed the riches of his glorious kingdom for 180 days or 6 months. That's a 6-month party.
- Parties cost a lot of money. I've never seen someone have a 6-month party but he did.
- This is the 4<sup>th</sup> King mentioned in Daniel Chapter 11. King Ahasuerus of Persia.
- This King is also known as XERXES in the ancient Greek language. Latin is Ahasuerus as we see today.
- So, we know XERXES or AHASUERUS attacked Greece.
- Daniel 11:2 says that "he shall stir up all against the realm of Grecia."

**[11] Daniel 11:2** *And now will I shew thee the truth. Behold, there shall stand up yet three kings in Persia; and the fourth shall be far richer than they all: and by his strength through his riches he shall stir up all against the realm of Grecia.*

- Now that verse should make more sense. 1) Cyrus, 2) Artaxerxes, 3) Darius, and 4) Ahasuerus.
- King Ahasuerus did attack Greece. One of the famous battles is called the battle of Thermopylae.
- They won that battle. Now, Daniel Chapter 11 moves fast at times.
- The next verse, verse 3, is moving forward in time to the first ruler of the Grecian empire.

**[12] Daniel 11:3** *And a mighty king shall stand up, that shall rule with great dominion, and do according to his will.*

- We learned about Alexander the Great in other chapters in the Book of Daniel.
- Alexander the Great did according to his will. He conquered whoever he wanted.
- He conquered the Persians and the Grecians became the world rulers with Alexander the Great.
- I hope you remember from past sermons that Alexander the Great died at the young age of 33 years old.
- Four of his generals took over the kingdom of Grecia and ruled in all 4 directions.

**[13] Daniel 11:4 And when he shall stand up, his kingdom shall be broken, and shall be divided toward the four winds of heaven; and not to his posterity, nor according to his dominion which he ruled: for his kingdom shall be plucked up, even for others beside those.**

- At the strongest point of Alexander the Great's rule, he died. His kingdom was broken and divided into 4.
- Do you remember the leopard with 4 heads from Daniel Chapter 7? Let's read that again.

**[14] Daniel 7:6 After this I beheld, and lo another, like a leopard, which had upon the back of it four wings of a fowl; the beast had also four heads; and dominion was given to it.**

- The Grecian empire is pictured as a leopard with 4 heads. That's talking about the 4 rulers after Alexander the Great.
- The first was a lion that represented Babylon. Then the bear representing the Medes and Persians.
- Then the leopard representing the Grecians, and finally, the Romans which are unlike any of the others.
- The Romans are up next after the Grecians, and the Romans are the ruling kingdom when Jesus comes at his first coming.
- 1) Babylon, 2) Medes and Persians, 3) Grecians, and 4) Romans. This is the actual order of kingdoms.
- And then remember from Daniel Chapter 8 that the Grecians are like the he goat.

**[15] Daniel 8:8 Therefore the he goat waxed very great: and when he was strong, the great horn was broken; and for it came up four notable ones toward the four winds of heaven.**

- So, we see that the Kingdom of Grecia in reality was split into 4 after Alexander the Great died.
- In the West, which is the area of Greece, we see Cassander of Macedonia.
- In the East and North, we see Seleucus in Babylon, Syria, and Mesopotamia.
- In the North, we see Antigonus in Asia. In the South, we see Ptolemy reigning in Egypt.
- So, the names of the 4 rulers are 1) Cassander, 2) Seleucus, 3) Antigonus, and 4) Ptolemy.
- And yes, this is important to know and understand Daniel Chapter 11.

**[16]**

- What I just said, is greatly simplified to go with what we're learning in Daniel Chapter 11.
- This map shows the kingdoms (Greece is to the far West out of the map). It's more complicated.
- The two strongest rulers that we're going to talk about were Ptolemy in the South (yellow).
- And Seleucus in the North and East (he is north of Egypt).
- You can see how large that Northern Kingdom is there (turquoise).
- So, we will be talking a lot about Ptolemy in the South and Seleucus in the North.
- Egypt in the South and Babylon in the North to simplify this.

**[17] Daniel 11:5 And the king of the south shall be strong, and one of his princes; and he shall be strong above him, and have dominion; his dominion shall be a great dominion.**

- The King of the South in this kingdom of Grecia is Ptolemy.
- "And one of his princes" is talking about another one of Alexander the Great's princes.
- We know this from the very next verse. This is talking about Seleucus who becomes King of the North.

- We'll see the King of the South and the King of the North throughout Daniel Chapter 11.

***[18] Daniel 11:6 And in the end of years they shall join themselves together; for the king's daughter of the south shall come to the king of the north to make an agreement: but she shall not retain the power of the arm; neither shall he stand, nor his arm: but she shall be given up, and they that brought her, and he that begat her, and he that strengthened her in these times.***

- Now we see for sure that verse 5 was talking about the King of the South and the King of the North.
- The two kingdoms or "THEY" in verse 6 will form in alliance in the latter years or join themselves together.
- This isn't talking about the same two kings Ptolemy and Seleucus as we've already moved on.
- Remember, Daniel Chapter 11 is covering hundreds of years quickly. We are talking about the kingdoms.
- The king's daughter in the South will come to the King of the North. They will form an alliance.
- They will make an agreement.

This would be difficult to understand if we didn't already know what happened.

- In the South Kingdom, there's many Kings with the name Ptolemy. There was Ptolemy Lagus.
- Ptolemy Soter, Ptolemy Philadelphus, Ptolemy Euergetes, Ptolemy Philopator, Ptolemy Epiphanes.
- And Ptolemy Philometor.
- In the North Kingdom, you get many named Seleucus and Antiochus. There's many of those.
- The North and South had been fighting for many years but now they want to make an alliance.
- At this time, the King of the South is Ptolemy Philadelphus.
- The King of the North is Antiochus Theos. The daughter of Ptolemy was named Bernice.
- The King of the North was already married. But he got rid of his wife and married Bernice.

Once the King of the South, Ptolemy Philadelphus, died, the King of the North got rid of Bernice.

- He took back his previous wife named Laodice. This is what Daniel 11 verse 6 means.
- "But she shall not retain the power of the arm, neither shall he stand, nor his arm: but she shall be given up, and they that brought her, and he that begat her, and he that strengthened her in these times."
- Bernice and her son with Antiochus Theos are eventually slain.
- So, the united kingdoms fall apart and they don't last.

***[19] Daniel 11:7-8 But out of a branch of her roots shall one stand up in his estate, which shall come with an army, and shall enter into the fortress of the king of the north, and shall deal against them, and shall prevail: 8 And shall also carry captives into Egypt their gods, with their princes, and with their precious vessels of silver and of gold; and he shall continue more years than the king of the north.***

- Out of a branch of Bernice's roots shall one stand up. Her roots refers to her ancestors.
- The branches are the children coming from the ancestors.
- Bernice's brother, Ptolemy Euergetes takes over for her father. You can imagine he might be angry.
- The North Kingdom killed his sister. Wouldn't you be angry? He stands up in Egypt.

He comes with an army. This actually happened. Remember, all this was written before it happened.

- He enters into the fortress of the King of the North just as it says there in verse 7.
- He takes captives back into Egypt with him. He takes precious vessels of silver and gold.
- And this King of the South, Ptolemy Euergetes, continues longer than the King of the North.
- Ptolemy Euergetes reigns for about 25 years while Seleucus Callinicus reigns for about 20 years.

**[20] Daniel 11:9-10** *So the king of the south shall come into his kingdom, and shall return into his own land. 10 But his sons shall be stirred up, and shall assemble a multitude of great forces: and one shall certainly come, and overflow, and pass through: then shall he return, and be stirred up, even to his fortress.*

- The King of the South, Ptolemy Eurgetes, returns to Egypt.
- But the sons of the King of the North are now stirred up because of what the King of the South did.
- This was Seleucus Ceraunus and Antiochus the Great.
- Seleucus Caeraunus dies and Antiochus the Great takes over at the age of 15 years old.
- Antiochus the Great wins some battles. Let's continue.

**[21] Daniel 11:11** *And the king of the south shall be moved with choler, and shall come forth and fight with him, even with the king of the north: and he shall set forth a great multitude; but the multitude shall be given into his hand.*

- Now we've moved to another King of the South.
- Notice that the Bible just calls them King of the North and King of the South.
- These aren't the same King. They're changing and moving fast throughout Daniel Chapter 11.
- The next King of the South is Ptolemy Philopater and he is very angry with the King of the North.
- That King of the North is still Antiochus the Great. They come to battle each other with large numbers.
- The King of the South wins this battle. Ptolemy Philopater is the winner of this one.

**[22] Daniel 11:12** *And when he hath taken away the multitude, his heart shall be lifted up; and he shall cast down many ten thousands: but he shall not be strengthened by it.*

- This is talking about the King of the South who just won this battle. His heart is lifted up.
- That's what happens when you win a big battle, but he wasn't strengthened by it.
- He didn't capture Antiochus the Great. He didn't really take advantage of this victory.

**[23] Daniel 11:13** *For the king of the north shall return, and shall set forth a multitude greater than the former, and shall certainly come after certain years with a great army and with much riches.*

- Antiochus the Great of the North returns later on with this huge army.
- The King of the South is now a different king. The former King who defeated Antiochus died.
- Ptolemy Epiphanes is now the King of the South and Antiochus takes advantage of this new King.
- And this new King is young. He takes the throne at the age of 5 years old.
- The King of the North comes against the South with a huge army about 14 years after the previous battle.

**[24] Daniel 11:14** *And in those times there shall many stand up against the king of the south: also the robbers of thy people shall exalt themselves to establish the vision; but they shall fall.*

- Many shall stand up against the King of the South. Now it's not just the King of the North.
- The King of the North makes an alliance with others. He brings in Philip King of Macedon from Greece.
- They join together and attack the South. So remember, this is the same Grecian kingdom.
- They continue to fight between themselves again and again and again. They can't stop fighting.

Notice this angels tells Daniel in this verse, “also the robbers of thy people.”

- This is talking about Daniel’s people, the Jews. There are thieving Jews who come into play here.
- “They shall exalt themselves to establish the vision, but they shall fall.”
- They’re going to try to take advantage of these continuous wars for their own vision.
- But it doesn’t work, and they fall. Their plan fails.

***[25] Daniel 11:15 So the king of the north shall come, and cast up a mount, and take the most fenced cities: and the arms of the south shall not withstand, neither his chosen people, neither shall there be any strength to withstand.***

- Antiochus the Great is the King of the North. He comes and takes cities of the South.
- The arms or armies of the South cannot withstand the armies of the North.
- “Neither his chosen people” is talking about the strongest soldiers or the elite soldiers.
- This isn’t talking about the children of Israel or God’s chosen people.
- This might be something like the Army Green Berets, the Army Rangers, or the Navy Seals.
- In the Bible, this would be the MIGHTY MEN OF VALOUR. Even they couldn’t stop the North.

***[26] Daniel 11:16 But he that cometh against him shall do according to his own will, and none shall stand before him: and he shall stand in the glorious land, which by his hand shall be consumed.***

- The King of the North is going to now do whatever he wants. “None shall stand before him.”
- The King of the South and his people cannot withstand Antiochus the Great.
- Antiochus the Great stands in the GLORIOUS LAND. This is JUDEA. It is the glorious land.
- The Jews submit to this King from the North. They receive this king into their city. They help him.
- Eventually, though, he consumes that land. But he’s taken over that area.

I hope you remember Antiochus Epiphanes from Daniel Chapter 8. He’s one that consumes the land of Judah.

- Remember, he stops the daily sacrifice. He’s like the antichrist from Revelation.
- We aren’t to him yet, but we’re getting closer to his time. Antiochus the Great is before him.
- Antiochus the Great ends his reign about 12 years before Antiochus Epiphanes takes over.
- There’s one King between them named Seleucus Philopator. Let’s continue in verse 17.

***[27] Daniel 11:17 He shall also set his face to enter with the strength of his whole kingdom, and upright ones with him; thus shall he do: and he shall give him the daughter of women, corrupting her: but she shall not stand on his side, neither be for him.***

- The King of the South is still there. They hadn’t yet completely conquered the South.
- This verse is talking about the King of the North setting his face to enter into Egypt.
- He had already conquered other parts including Judah, but now he wants to enter the strength.
- And the strength of the South was in Egypt. The upright ones there are most likely the Jews.

Now, the King of the North is going to try the same thing the King of the South did earlier in the chapter.

- “And he shall give him the daughter of women, corrupting her: but she shall not stand on his side, neither be for him.”
- The daughter of women is like the son of man. This is simply talking about a woman being given.
- The King of the North gives his daughter, Cleopatra the First, to the King of the South.

- The King of the South marries Cleopatra the First.
- So, this is a strategy by the King of the North to conquer the King of the South.

Cleopatra the Seventh is the famous Cleopatra.

- She was the queen of Egypt. She was a lover of Julius Caesar. She became the wife of Mark Antony.
- The Roman armies of Octavian defeated the Egyptians.
- Mark Antony was told Cleopatra was dead, which was a lie and killed himself by falling on his sword.
- Once Cleopatra buried Mark Antony, she committed suicide herself.
- Some say with an asp or poisonous snake.
- This Cleopatra in Daniel Chapter 10 is not Cleopatra the Seventh. This is Cleopatra the First.

She is sent to the King of the South as a ploy to conquer the South.

- But she doesn't do what the King of the North wanted. "She shall not stand on his side."
- "His side" is the King of the North's side. It's difficult to know who he, his is in this chapter.
- If we didn't have history, Daniel Chapter 11 would be very, very difficult to understand.
- Cleopatra the First cleaves to her new husband. The strategy of the Northern King didn't work.
- His daughter, Cleopatra the First, actually takes part in the victory against her own father.
- The King of the North is not able to take over Egypt and the King of the South.

***[28] Daniel 11:18 After this shall he turn his face unto the isles, and shall take many: but a prince for his own behalf shall cause the reproach offered by him to cease; without his own reproach he shall cause it to turn upon him.***

- Since the King of the North can't conquer the South, he turns his face to the isles or islands.
- He wins many naval battles in the seas. He goes to the Aegean sea and takes many islands.
- He takes several cities of Greece and of Asia, which were on the coasts of the seas.
- So, this is still Antiochus the Great from the Northern Kingdom of Grecia.
- He starts conquering some of the Roman territories. A Roman prince stands up to stop this reproach.
- Reproach is offense. Now the Romans are going to come into this and start fighting back.
- "He shall cause it to turn upon him."

***[29] Daniel 11:19 Then he shall turn his face toward the fort of his own land: but he shall stumble and fall, and not be found.***

- Antiochus the Great is defeated by the prince of the Romans and must return home. He went too far.
- He goes home, he stumbles and falls due these defeats, he dies, and he can't be found any more. That's it.
- Antiochus the Great reigned for about 37 years and died around 52 years of age.

***[30] Daniel 11:20 Then shall stand up in his estate a raiser of taxes in the glory of the kingdom: but within few days he shall be destroyed, neither in anger, nor in battle.***

- So, Antiochus the Great owed a lot of money because of those wars. Supposedly, that's how he died.
- He was trying to rob the Persians because he needed money and was killed.
- His son, Seleucus Philopater, is the next King and he needed to pay the Romans.
- He raised the taxes in an attempt to raise more money. He was King for about 12 years.

The Bible says, "But within few days he shall be destroyed." His father reigned for 37 years.

- He reigned for 12 years so I am assuming the few days means a short time compared to his father.
- He wasn't destroyed in anger nor in battle. Supposedly, his treasurer, Heliodorus poisoned him.
- And some think it was done so Antiochus Epiphanes could take over.
- And we've already talked about Antiochus Epiphanes. He made coins that said he was God in the flesh.
- Well, watch what the next verse says and see if Daniel Chapter 11 makes perfect sense.

**[31] Daniel 11:21 *And in his estate shall stand up a vile person, to whom they shall not give the honour of the kingdom: but he shall come in peaceably, and obtain the kingdom by flatteries.***

- Antiochus Epiphanes is the antichrist of this period. He sets up the transgression of desolation.
- He declares himself to be God. "And in his estate shall stand up a VILE person."
- They never made him King. "To whom they shall not give honour of the kingdom."
- It wasn't given to him. "Be he shall come in peaceably, and obtain the kingdom by flatteries."
- So pay attention to that one. This is a picture of the future antichrist in Revelation.
- The entire Bible warns us about people who use flattery. They are doing that for themselves.

**[32] Proverbs 29:5 *A man that flattereth his neighbour spreadeth a net for his feet.***

- Anyone who continuously flatters you is spreading a net to trap you.
- There are countless books that teach you how to use flattery to get what you want. And it works.
- It worked for Antiochus Epiphanes who is a picture of THE antichrist in Revelation.
- Now, we're going to talk about Antiochus Epiphanes the rest of Daniel Chapter 11.
- The Bible has been leading up to this point and explaining how we got here to this antichrist.
- He doesn't fight for the Kingdom. He's smarter than that. He does it by flattery. Not by force.

**[33] Daniel 11:22 *And with the arms of a flood shall they be overflown from before him, and shall be broken; yea, also the prince of the covenant.***

- With the arms or armies of a flood, they shall be overflown from before Antiochus Epiphanes.
- All of these other armies are like a flood and they break each other.
- At the end of verse 22, you see: "yea, also the prince of the covenant."
- The covenant is the Old Testament. The prince of the covenant there most likely means the high priest.
- That would be the high priest of the children of Israel or the prince of the covenant.
- Prince means first one or high ruler or prince. Most likely, that's what this means.
- Antiochus Epiphanes got rid of the Onias the high priest and sold the office for silver.

**[34] Daniel 11:23 *And after the league made with him he shall work deceitfully: for he shall come up, and shall become strong with a small people.***

- To me, this is showing us what to look for in the antichrist that is coming soon.
- He's working deceitfully, flattering people, he's working his way up the ranks, and he becomes strong.
- And he doesn't do it with the high and mighty people. He becomes strong with a small people.



**[35] Daniel 11:24** *He shall enter peaceably even upon the fattest places of the province; and he shall do that which his fathers have not done, nor his fathers' fathers; he shall scatter among them the prey, and spoil, and riches: yea, and he shall forecast his devices against the strong holds, even for a time.*

- He knows how to work this game through deceit. He knows how to come into power.
- He goes to the fattest places or the richest places of the province.
- He does that which his fathers have not done. Remember this from Daniel Chapter 8:

**[36] Daniel 8:23-24** *And in the latter time of their kingdom, when the transgressors are come to the full, a king of fierce countenance, and understanding dark sentences, shall stand up. 24 And his power shall be mighty, but not by his own power: and he shall destroy wonderfully, and shall prosper, and practise, and shall destroy the mighty and the holy people.*

**[37] Daniel 8:25** *And through his policy also he shall cause craft to prosper in his hand; and he shall magnify himself in his heart, and by peace shall destroy many: he shall also stand up against the Prince of princes; but he shall be broken without hand.*

- He used dark sentences and witchcraft. He does that which his fathers have not done. The man is evil.
- He knows exactly what to do because his power is coming from Satan himself.
- He scatters his prey. He takes the spoil and the riches for himself.
- He continues for a time until he is conquered. "He shall be broken without hand."
- Daniel Chapter 8 and Daniel Chapter 11 teach us many things about this little horn or antichrist.

**[38] Daniel 11:25** *And he shall stir up his power and his courage against the king of the south with a great army; and the king of the south shall be stirred up to battle with a very great and mighty army; but he shall not stand: for they shall forecast devices against him.*

- The King of the North is now Antiochus Epiphanes. Again, the King of the North and South will battle.
- This time, the King of the South does not stand. Ptolemy Philometer flees and runs away.
- Antiochus Epiphanes conquers much of Egypt. Finally. Do you see how this chapter leads up to that?
- There's a great struggle but eventually Antiochus Epiphanes wins.
- The King of the South loses because "they shall forecast devices against him."
- The King of the South had some of his own men turn on him to the deception of Antiochus Epiphanes.

**[39] Daniel 11:26** *Yea, they that feed of the portion of his meat shall destroy him, and his army shall overflow: and many shall fall down slain.*

- People close to the King of the South that feed of his portion of meat help to destroy him.
- His army overflows but many fall down slain. The King of the South loses the battle.

**[40] Daniel 11:27** *And both these kings' hearts shall be to do mischief, and they shall speak lies at one table; but it shall not prosper: for yet the end shall be at the time appointed.*

- These 2 kings knew each other very well, but they're both great liars.
- They act nice to each other's faces, but they're looking to actually destroy each other.
- They have peace talks. They act like they are friends and so on. You know how that works.

- It's all over this world now. People are nice to each other's face and then talk bad when they leave.
- They made peace, but it did not last or prosper.
- The end to this kingdom is coming soon "at the time appointed."

***[41] Daniel 11:28 Then shall he return into his land with great riches; and his heart shall be against the holy covenant; and he shall do exploits, and return to his own land.***

- Antiochus Epiphanes wins, he returns to his land with great riches, and then watch.
- You need to see how this matches with Revelation perfectly.
- The antichrist in Revelation works his way up to power and then he turns his wrath to God's people.
- That's when the Great Tribulation begins. But watch how this matches perfectly.
- He returns and then sets his heart against the holy covenant or the Old Testament. He's against it.
- He hates God and he hates the Old Covenant or Old Testament. He hates the Jews.

***[42] Daniel 11:29-30 At the time appointed he shall return, and come toward the south; but it shall not be as the former, or as the latter. 30 For the ships of Chittim shall come against him: therefore he shall be grieved, and return, and have indignation against the holy covenant: so shall he do; he shall even return, and have intelligence with them that forsake the holy covenant.***

- So, he's going to fight the South again, but he has to stop and fight some others first.
- He's grieved. He returns home. And now he's ANGRY with the Old Covenant, the Holy Covenant.
- "And have intelligence with them that forsake the holy covenant."
- That would be the Jews who forsook God. He's going to join up with them.

And what do you see in Israel today? Those are Jews who forsook God. They are antichrist themselves.

- They reject the Lord Jesus Christ making them antichrist. This is telling us about the future.
- That's going to happen in the future, and it already happened here.
- Antiochus Epiphanes joins up with them because they forsake God themselves. He hates God too.
- So he's going to stop the Jews from worshipping God. And what do we see next?

***[43] Daniel 11:31 And arms shall stand on his part, and they shall pollute the sanctuary of strength, and shall take away the daily sacrifice, and they shall place the abomination that maketh desolate.***

- His armies come into Jerusalem. They pollute the sanctuary of strength. That's the temple of God.
- They take away the daily sacrifice and place an abomination there instead.
- This abomination is an idol or a great image for worship. We see this in Revelation Chapter 13.

***[44] Revelation 13:14 And deceiveth them that dwell on the earth by the means of those miracles which he had power to do in the sight of the beast; saying to them that dwell on the earth, that they should make an image to the beast, which had the wound by a sword, and did live.***

- The abomination of desolation is an idol or statue or image for people to worship in God's temple.
- Some think that an image of Jupiter Olympias or Zeus was placed on the altar by Antiochus Epiphanes.
- But I don't know if that's true because Antiochus Epiphanes claimed to be God himself.
- That's an example, though, of the abomination of desolation in Revelation: "An image to the beast."
- And the beast is the antichrist in the Book of Revelation.

**[45] Daniel 11:32-33** *And such as do wickedly against the covenant shall he corrupt by flatteries: but the people that do know their God shall be strong, and do exploits. 33 And they that understand among the people shall instruct many: yet they shall fall by the sword, and by flame, by captivity, and by spoil, many days.*

- The Jews who profess to know God but go against God and his covenant are corrupted by flatteries.
- Some people love to be flattered so much that they'll fall for all of this deception.
- "But the people that do know their God shall be strong, and do exploits." OR stand up against this evil.
- The people who truly know God won't take that evil trash. They stood up then.
- There will be people who stand up for God in Revelation. They that understand will instruct many.

If we're still here when all this happens, we will be instructing others about what's really going on. We won't stop.

- We're doing that right now. We're teaching a chapter that most preachers won't even consider.
- It's too much work. It's too much time. It's easier to just preach about a false god who loves everyone.
- If you're going to stand up for God, you should be ready to die for God.
- "Yet, they shall fall by the sword, and by flame, by captivity, and by spoil, many days.
- But understand, God will take care of you.
- One of the greatest honors you could ever be chosen by God to do is to stand up and die for God.
- This already happened, but it will happen again in the future.
- They shut down the temple, place in idol for worship, and persecute God's true people.

**[46] Daniel 11:34** *Now when they shall fall, they shall be holpen with a little help: but many shall cleave to them with flatteries.*

- The ones that are standing up for God and fighting back are going to get a little bit of help.
- MOST, though, are going to cleave to those people through flatteries. They don't really care.
- They're just acting like they're on God's side. When it comes down to it, though, they aren't.
- That's exactly what you see in the world today in so-called "Christian" churches.
- They act like they support God, but when it comes to something like rejecting sodomy, they aren't.
- They will side with the world versus God because they might get some persecution from the world.

**[47] Daniel 11:35** *And some of them of understanding shall fall, to try them, and to purge, and to make them white, even to the time of the end: because it is yet for a time appointed.*

- This is what happens in the end. It's a picture of the future. Some of them will fall. Some will die for Jesus.
- Others will make it to the very end.

**[48] Matthew 24:22** *And except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved: but for the elect's sake those days shall be shortened.*

- Remember, some people will make it to the end. Some people in Daniel Chapter 11 made it through.
- This simply means they made it through without being killed.
- Some people will make it through the great tribulation without being killed.

**[49] Daniel 11:36-37** *And the king shall do according to his will; and he shall exalt himself, and magnify himself above every god, and shall speak marvellous things against the God of gods, and shall prosper till the*

***indignation be accomplished: for that that is determined shall be done. 37 Neither shall he regard the God of his fathers, nor the desire of women, nor regard any god: for he shall magnify himself above all.***

- Antiochus Epiphanes did all of these things. He magnified himself above every god.
- He doesn't even desire women. Women have no control over him.
- It won't work to send him a wife as a gift as the other kings tried. This means he may have been a sodomite.
- He's a vile person that Bible told us in verse 21 of this chapter. Sodomites are vile people.

***[50] Romans 1:26-27 For this cause God gave them up unto vile affections: for even their women did change the natural use into that which is against nature: 27 And likewise also the men, leaving the natural use of the woman, burned in their lust one toward another; men with men working that which is unseemly, and receiving in themselves that recompence of their error which was meet.***

- This man will magnify himself above God. He thinks he is god. Already happened. Will happen again.
- He may have been a sodomite. The antichrist in the future might be a sodomite.

***[51] Daniel 11:38 But in his estate shall he honour the God of forces: and a god whom his fathers knew not shall he honour with gold, and silver, and with precious stones, and pleasant things.***

- He rejects all other gods but he honors the god of forces. His fathers didn't know this god of forces.
- It's this god that's everywhere and inside of us. It's the one that people say, "Yeah, I believe in some god."
- "Yeah, there's a god out there but the god isn't male or female, it doesn't have a name."
- "It's just a force out there that is god, and it doesn't rule have any rules. I can do whatever I want."
- That's the same god that Antiochus Epiphanes would honor. You see the same thing today.
- This god of forces sounds good to people so they make that god their own personal god.
- That's what you've seen in recent years when all religions get together and they worship the same god.
- It's a god that we can all respect and honor together. It's this one god that makes all of us happy.

***[52] Daniel 11:39 Thus shall he do in the most strong holds with a strange god, whom he shall acknowledge and increase with glory: and he shall cause them to rule over many, and shall divide the land for gain.***

- He glorifies this strange god. He increases this god through his power.
- He causes this strange god to rule over many. He forces people to worship this strange god.
- He's going to divide the land for gain.

***[53] Daniel 11:40 And at the time of the end shall the king of the south push at him: and the king of the north shall come against him like a whirlwind, with chariots, and with horsemen, and with many ships; and he shall enter into the countries, and shall overflow and pass over.***

- At the time of the end of the Grecian empire, the King of the South will come at him again.
- The King of the North comes against the King of the South.
- Antiochus Epiphanes entered into the countries and he passed over them.

***[54] Daniel 11:41-42 He shall enter also into the glorious land, and many countries shall be overthrown: but these shall escape out of his hand, even Edom, and Moab, and the chief of the children of Ammon. 42 He shall stretch forth his hand also upon the countries: and the land of Egypt shall not escape.***

- Edom, Moab, and the chief of the children of Ammon escape out of this antichrist's hand.
- Egypt does not escape his hand.

***[55] Daniel 11:43 But he shall have power over the treasures of gold and of silver, and over all the precious things of Egypt: and the Libyans and the Ethiopians shall be at his steps.***

- So we see that he takes over all the precious things of Egypt. The Libyans and Ethiopians are with him.
- They are at his steps or allied with this Antiochus Epiphanes.

***[56] Daniel 11:44 But tidings out of the east and out of the north shall trouble him: therefore he shall go forth with great fury to destroy, and utterly to make away many.***

- He hears bad news from the East and the North. He's furious so he goes forth to destroy.

***[57] Daniel 11:45 And he shall plant the tabernacles of his palace between the seas in the glorious holy mountain; yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him.***

- Where does he end up? He plants his tabernacles of his palace between the seas in the glorious holy mountain.

***[58]***

- Israel in the land between the seas. It's between the Red Sea and the Mediterranean Sea.
- It is in the glorious holy mountain. So he settles there in Israel. His tabernacle is set up there.
- "Yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him."
- History tells us that he died suddenly from disease or that he drowned himself.
- Daniel 8:25 tells us "he shall be broken without hand." No man laid hands upon him to kill him.
- The Bible is truth. I hope you've stayed with me throughout Daniel Chapter 11.

It's a difficult chapter, but it's an amazing chapter that predicts all of these things before they happen.

- Next time we'll go to the last chapter in the Book of Daniel, Daniel Chapter 12.
- Daniel Chapter 12 is about future events or end times prophecy.
- Daniel Chapter 11 already happened, but it's going to happen again in the end times.
- This is a picture of the antichrist coming, and THE antichrist is coming soon.
- And yes, we need to know these things because God put them here in the Bible for us.
- Daniel Chapter 11 is about the things happening on earth. Past and future events.
- Daniel Chapter 12 is about the things happening in heaven at the same time of the future events.

Let's pray.

## SERMON: DANIEL CHAPTER 12

[2] The title of the sermon today is “DANIEL CHAPTER 12.”

- If you remember, Daniel Chapter 10 was an introduction to Daniel Chapter 11.
- Daniel was in the 3<sup>rd</sup> year of the King of Persia when he understood the vision.
- Daniel or Belteshazzar saw this great angel who helped him understand.
- In Daniel Chapter 11, we get a summary in great detail of several hundred years.
- The entire Book of Daniel covers a period of about 450 years.
- Daniel was born around 620 BC or so and Antiochus Epiphanes reigns until 164 BC.
- We see prophecies into the future for Daniel but also into the future for us.

In Daniel Chapter 11, we see Cyrus is the current King of Persia.

- The angel gives Daniel understanding and shows him this line of kings after Cyrus.
- The angel tells Daniel about the kings of Persia and then the king of Grecia.
- We see the 2 strongest kings in Grecia fighting with each other constantly
- There's an entire line of kings on each side of the Northern Kingdom and the Southern Kingdom.
- We see a line of Ptolemy in the South and Seleucus or Antiochus in the North.
- We see this fighting going on all the way down through Antiochus Epiphanes.

And we know Antiochus Epiphanes is a picture of the antichrist. He's a great deceiver. He uses flattery to conquer.

- When flattery isn't working, he uses his great army from the Northern Kingdom of Grecia.
- Antiochus Epiphanes hates God. He thinks he is god. He pays honor to some false god.
- He goes into the temple in Jerusalem and makes it desolate.
- He sets up an abomination inside God's temple. Soon after he dies of disease or suicide.
- In other words, don't mess with God. Seriously?
- Don't be deceived by Satan into thinking you're something you aren't. He paid for that.
- That man is burning in hell right now. He magnified himself above God Almighty.
- We finished Daniel Chapter 11 with this verse about Antiochus Epiphanes.

***[3] Daniel 11:45 And he shall plant the tabernacles of his palace between the seas in the glorious holy mountain; yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him.***

- That's what happens when you reject God over and over again.
- You can conquer everything you want on this earth and reject God, and you'll end up like him.
- “Yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him.” There's no one to help once you reject God.
- You can be dying from disease. No one can help you but God.

If you've rejected him all your life, he might not hear you.

- If you magnify yourself on this earth, God won't be there to help you.
- When you face death on your own, it's going to be the scariest thing you've ever faced.
- And just like Antiochus Epiphanes, “AND NONE SHALL HELP.”
- So you best accept Jesus Christ as your only Savior right now.
- Then you won't have to worry about death and hell.

Before we start in Daniel Chapter 12, you should understand that Daniel Chapter 11 already happened.

- But Daniel Chapter 11 is going to happen again. We've already seen a picture of the antichrist.
- We see it again closer Jesus Christ's first coming with Vespasian Emperor of Rome.
- In Daniel Chapter 11, we know Antiochus Epiphanes is an example of the antichrist.
- And "THE" antichrist in Revelation will be similar to that man but far greater.
- Daniel Chapter 12 is telling us about the future events prophesied in Daniel Chapter 11.
- We're going to see not just the worldly side of these events but the heavenly and spiritual side too.
- With that said, let's there in verse 1 of Daniel Chapter 12.

***[4] Daniel 12:1 And at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people: and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time thy people shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book.***

- This is talking about Michael the archangel, the great prince, standing up for the children of Israel.
- Some false religions believe that Michael the archangel is Jesus Christ and that is incorrect.
- Michael is a great prince of the angels, but he is just one of the chief princes of the angels.
- The Bible isn't trying to trick us into thinking Jesus Christ is Michael the archangel.
- Satan is kicked out of heaven for good during this time of great trouble or tribulation.

Why was Satan kicked out? Because Michael the archangel stood up as God commanded him to do.

- When God wants something to happen, it happens. This must happen because it is written.
- And there will be a GREAT TIME OF TROUBLE such as NEVER WAS.
- When the Bible says that, you better believe it. That time hasn't come.
- What we see today isn't even close to what this time of great trouble will be like. Not even close.
- You'll know when the tribulation and especially the great tribulation arrives. There will be no question.
- You won't miss it. You won't say: "Oh, I must have missed that great time of trouble."

Towards the end of verse 1, you see: "And at that time thy people shall be delivered."

- The names of people who are written in the Book of Life will be delivered at that time.
- All names written in the Book of Life are God's people, or the spiritual Israel.
- We know from our verse by verse study of Revelation that the rapture or first resurrection happens directly after the Great Tribulation.
- This verse in the Book of Daniel shows us the exact same timing that we see in Revelation.
- Matthew 24, Mark 13, Luke 21 all match this perfectly.

***[5] Matthew 24:21-22 For then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be. 22 And except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved: but for the elect's sake those days shall be shortened.***

***[6] Matthew 24:29-30 Immediately after the tribulation of those days shall the sun be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, and the stars shall fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken: 30 And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.***

***[7] Matthew 24:31 And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.***



- At the rapture, which is the first resurrection, “thy people shall be delivered.”
- We see there will be great tribulation, the sun and moon darkened, stars fall from heaven.
- “And then shall appear the Son of man in heaven.” The Lord’s day is here.
- It will be a great and terrible day. Great for the saved. Terrible for the unsaved.
- “Then shall the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds.”
- That is the second coming of Jesus Christ. If he didn’t come at that time, no flesh would be saved.
- None of the saved IN THEIR FLESH would make it through the great tribulation.
- Who comes and puts a stop to all the persecution and killing of God’s people? JESUS CHRIST HIMSELF.
- And Daniel Chapter 12 verse 1 matches this timeline perfectly.

**[8] Daniel 12:2 And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt.**

- We know from Revelation and 1 Corinthians Chapter 15 that there are 3 resurrections in total.
- Notice, Daniel Chapter 12 is talking about the resurrections of the people sleeping in the dust of the earth.
- When your body dies, it goes to sleep in the earth. Your soul goes to heaven or hell.
- If your soul is alive, your soul goes directly to heaven. If your soul is dead, your soul goes directly to hell.
- Once you believe on the Lord Jesus Christ to save you in this life, you are alive forevermore.
- We know there are 3 resurrections in total. Here they are:

**[9]**

#1	#2	#3
<b>The First fruits</b>	<b>The First Resurrection</b>	<b>The Second Resurrection</b>
Who? Jesus Christ	Who? All Saved Prior to Rapture	Who? All Saved After The Rapture
When? His Resurrection	When? At the Rapture	When? After the Thousand Years

- 1) We see Christ is the first fruits. He received the very first glorified body.
- He arose on the first fruits, which is the first day of the week during the days of unleavened bread.
- 2) We see the first resurrection. This is all saved people prior to the rapture.
- All of those people who die before the rapture will receive a newly resurrected body at the rapture.
- Your body will arise out of the grave and will go from mortal to immortal.
- 3) After the thousand years or millennium when Jesus reigns on earth, the second resurrection occurs.
- This is the final resurrection. All those who are saved after the rapture will receive a new glorified body.

But something else also happens at this second or final resurrection.

- So, Daniel Chapter 12 is telling us about the second resurrection in verse 2.
- Verse 1 talked about the first resurrection. Verse 2 talks about the second resurrection.
- From Revelation, we know that the living and the dead are resurrected at the second resurrection.
- The great white throne judgements happens when all the dead are resurrected.
- The dead are judged at the great white throne judgement.
- Their bodies come out of the grave and meet their dead souls from hell. Why?
- To be judged by their works. The living are never judged by their works to be saved.
- With that said, let’s read verse 2 again.

**[10] Daniel 12:2** *And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt.*

- After the thousand years, the bodies sleeping in the earth shall awake.
- Some will go directly to everlasting life. These are the saved. Some to shame and everlasting contempt.
- These are the unsaved. Look at Daniel 12 verse 2 again. Watch this now from John Chapter 5.

**[11] John 5:28-29** *Marvel not at this: for the hour is coming, in the which all that are in the graves shall hear his voice, 29 And shall come forth; they that have done good, unto the resurrection of life; and they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of damnation.*

- Again, 3 resurrections. 1) Christ the first fruits. 2) First resurrection of the living at the rapture.
- 3) Second or final resurrection of the living and the dead after the thousand year reign of Jesus Christ.
- That's it for the resurrections within the Bible. Jesus is the only one that went from dead to alive.
- You won't be resurrected to life if your soul is dead in hell.
- JESUS IS THE ONLY ONE whose soul went to hell, he was considered dead, and is now alive.
- Some people will say that I am a heretic for saying the soul of Jesus went to hell.
- Some will say I am a heretic for saying that Jesus Christ was dead. But let's see what Jesus says.
- This is Jesus Christ HIMSELF speaking in Revelation Chapter 1.

**[12] Revelation 1:17-18** *And when I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead. And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me, Fear not; I am the first and the last: 18 I am he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death.*

- Jesus says, "I am he that liveth, AND WAS DEAD; and, BEHOLD, I AM ALIVE for evermore, AMEN."
- He lives. He was dead. He is alive forevermore. So remember, we aren't like Jesus. He is God.
- His soul went to hell, and he arose from the dead. And he is alive forevermore. Understand that.

**[13] Acts 2:31** *He seeing this before spake of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption.*

- You can't die without being saved in this life and go to hell and come back to life. Only Jesus did that.
- So again, Jesus is THE FIRSTFRUITS. He received the first glorified body.
- One day, if you're saved, you'll receive a new glorified body. Your body changes in a moment.
- It goes from mortal to immortal, from corruption to incorruption. You will sin no more.
- Jesus is THE only one who lives a sinless life in the flesh just like us. He never sinned once.
- He was the only possible sacrifice for all sins of all time. He went to the cross and died for you and I.
- His soul went to hell. He arose from THE DEAD in his new body. He ate and drank in his new body.

Listen, there's all kinds of so-called "Christian" denominations that don't believe in the resurrections.

- The resurrections are clearly shown in the Old Testament and the New Testament.
- There were Jews called the Sadducees who didn't believe in the resurrection.

**[14] Acts 23:8** *For the Sadducees say that there is no resurrection, neither angel, nor spirit: but the Pharisees confess both.*

- The Bible even calls people out by name who say that the resurrection is already past.

***[15] 2 Timothy 2:17-18 And their word will eat as doth a canker: of whom is Hymenaeus and Philetus; 18 Who concerning the truth have erred, saying that the resurrection is past already; and overthrow the faith of some.***

- This Scripture is from 2 Timothy and the resurrection is not past. It's obvious by that Scripture.
- The rapture has not happened. The thousand year reign of Christ on earth has not happened.

But so-called "Christians" today will argue about this. Whose an example?

- The Jehovah's Witness is a perfect example. They'll say they believe in the resurrection of Jesus Christ.
- Just like all the churches around say they believe you're saved by grace through faith.
- But that's not what they really mean. Keep asking them. Get to the details of what they believe.
- That's why no one wants to talk about the details. Ask a preacher what he believes.
- And you'll get this: "Well, I don't like to talk about the Bible. It just causes arguments." That's right it does.
- The Jehovah's Witness will say that the spirit of Jesus left his body and that is the resurrection.
- No, that's not a resurrection. That's called DYING. He yielded up the ghost or the spirit. That's dying.
- The Jehovah's Witness deny the bodily resurrection of Jesus Christ. THEY ARE EVIL.

***[16] John 20:27-28 Then saith he to Thomas, Reach hither thy finger, and behold my hands; and reach hither thy hand, and thrust it into my side: and be not faithless, but believing. 28 And Thomas answered and said unto him, My Lord and my God.***

- The Jehovah's Witness have no faith in the word of God. Jesus showed he was in his body.
- He ate and drank. He showed the holes in his hands and the holes in his side.
- If you deny the bodily resurrection of Jesus Christ, you don't believe the Bible. You call God a liar!!!
- I'm going over this because Daniel Chapter 12 talks about the resurrections.
- There are 2 future resurrections. Only Jesus Christ has been resurrected at this time. No one else.
- The Bible warns us directly about these heretics over and over again. Let's continue in Daniel 12:3.

***[17] Daniel 12:3 And they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament; and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars for ever and ever.***

- What does "they that turn many to righteousness" mean? It's simple.
- You go find someone that does unrighteousness and you turn them to righteousness.
- This means soul winning. This means preaching the truth to someone to turn them to righteousness.

Does that mean to get them to start doing good works like feeding the homeless?

- Does that make someone righteous? NO!!! Your works will never make you righteous.
- "But I've done so many great things. I've done so much work for charities. I've helped so many people."
- None of those good works gain you righteousness.
- Righteousness only comes through the Lord Jesus Christ.

***[18] Genesis 15:6 And he believed in the LORD; and he counted it to him for righteousness.***

- The only way to gain righteousness is for God to add it to you. You've broken the laws.
- That means you can't gain righteousness on your own. You need Jesus Christ to forgive your sin.

- Daniel 12:3 says, "And they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament."
- "And they will shine as the stars for ever and ever." This is talking about the wise.

**[19] Proverbs 11:30 *The fruit of the righteous is a tree of life; and he that winneth souls is wise.***

- If you want to be wise, "HE THAT WINNETH SOULS" is wise. Don't you want to be a tree of life?
- In this life, bring everlasting life to people. Bring the good news of Jesus Christ.
- Show people how simple and how easy it is to be saved. Show people the true goodness of God.
- Salvation is based on faith alone. If you believe, you're saved. But after that, what are you doing?

If you win souls to Christ as God commands us to do, you will receive rewards in heaven.

- These will be eternal rewards. This isn't like a birthday cake that you eat and it's gone.
- Heavenly rewards aren't like a promotion at work or a raise. Those things pass away.
- Get to work for God doing his work, which is winning souls to Christ, and you will shine as the stars.
- And it's not just a quick shine. Daniel 12:3 says you will shine as the stars forever and ever.
- And the Bible is the truth. There will be different levels of glory and shining in heaven.
- When we all get there one day, I want to see your light shining brighter than mine.

**[20] Revelation 22:12 *And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be.***

- Works do not get you into heaven. Works do not gain righteousness. Works get you rewards in heaven.
- And if you don't already have that pass into heaven, the works aren't going to do you any good.
- FIRST, you need to be saved by simply changing your mind and believing that Jesus can save you from hell.

**[21] Daniel 12:4 *But thou, O Daniel, shut up the words, and seal the book, even to the time of the end: many shall run to and fro, and knowledge shall be increased.***

- This angel tells Daniel to shut up the words and seal the book even unto the time of the end.
- This is why we use Revelation and the light of that book to help us understand Daniel.
- "Even unto the time of the end: many shall run to and fro, and knowledge shall be increased."
- In the time of the end, we're able to get around easier. We're able to increase knowledge much easier.

We have the internet. We can watch sermons from preachers across the world in an instant.

- People have downloaded over 100 of our sermons in one day at this point.
- They are from all over this country and world. Knowledge spreads and increases quickly.
- All you have to do is put the work into the Bible, and you can increase your knowledge easily.
- We have software where we can search the Bible and find things very quickly.
- We have the New Testament. We have the indwelling of the Holy Ghost. "Knowledge shall be increased."
- And I think it will continue to increase as the end comes.
- Before we move on, I want to remind you where Daniel was when he first saw the angel in these chapters.

**[22] Daniel 10:4-5 *And in the four and twentieth day of the first month, as I was by the side of the great river, which is Hiddekel; 5 Then I lifted up mine eyes, and looked, and behold a certain man clothed in linen, whose loins were girded with fine gold of Uphaz:***

**[23] Daniel 10:6** *His body also was like the beryl, and his face as the appearance of lightning, and his eyes as lamps of fire, and his arms and his feet like in colour to polished brass, and the voice of his words like the voice of a multitude.*

- Daniel was standing by the great river Hiddekel which was one of the branches from the Garden of Eden.
- Now, let's take a look at verse 5 in Daniel Chapter 12.

**[24] Daniel 12:5** *Then I Daniel looked, and, behold, there stood other two, the one on this side of the bank of the river, and the other on that side of the bank of the river.*

- Besides the angel that was talking with Daniel, there are two others there.
- There's one on this side of the bank of the river and one on the other side of the bank of the river.

**[25] Daniel 12:6** *And one said to the man clothed in linen, which was upon the waters of the river, How long shall it be to the end of these wonders?*

- The man clothed in linen is the angel that Daniel was speaking to and he is upon the waters of the river.
- One of the other angels asks the one with Daniel, "How long shall it be to the end of these wonders?"

**[26] Daniel 12:7** *And I heard the man clothed in linen, which was upon the waters of the river, when he held up his right hand and his left hand unto heaven, and swore by him that liveth for ever that it shall be for a time, times, and an half; and when he shall have accomplished to scatter the power of the holy people, all these things shall be finished.*

- The angel who is a man clothed in linen who is upon the waters of the river answers the question.
- He holds up his right hand and his left hand to heaven. He swears by God that this is true.
- The amount of time is a TIME, TIMES, and a HALF. Time = 1 year, times = 2 years, half = 0.5 year.
- Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week is a 7-year period of time. A time, times, and half a time is 3.5 years.
- What's the middle point of a 7-year period? 3.5 years. There's a first half and a second half.
- Right in the middle of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week, something happens. The abomination of desolation.

So, for the first 3.5 years, we see the tribulation. The antichrist is not in power yet, but he's gaining.

- He's persecuting the whole world. He then switches his focus on the saints in the great tribulation.
- Right in the middle of the week, or 3.5 year mid point, we see the abomination of desolation.

**[27] Daniel 9:27** *And he shall confirm the covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations he shall make it desolate, even until the consummation, and that determined shall be poured upon the desolate.*

- This Scripture proves the abomination of desolation is the middle of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week.
- He causes the daily sacrifice to cease. He takes over in his kingdom. He dies and comes back to life.
- Jesus Christ comes in the clouds and raptures all of the saints away. God's wrath begins.

Jesus doesn't come right in the middle of the 7-years. The abomination of desolation happens in the middle.

- Shortly after the middle of the week, the sun and moon is darkened and Jesus comes in the clouds.
- The antichrist continues to reign over the world for the last 3.5 years, approximately.

- At the end of Daniel 12:7, you see: "All these things shall be finished."
- That's talking about the end of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week.

**[28] Daniel 12:8-9** *And I heard, but I understood not: then said I, O my Lord, what shall be the end of these things? 9 And he said, Go thy way, Daniel: for the words are closed up and sealed till the time of the end.*

- Daniel hears what the angel is saying, but he doesn't it. He asks for more information.
- But the angel says, "Go thy way, Daniel." That's all I have to say right now.
- "For the words are closed up and sealed till the time of the end."
- We now have the Book of Revelation to help us understand this. We have the New Testament.
- We have the indwelling of the Holy Spirit. Knowledge is increasing.

**[29] Daniel 12:10** *Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried; but the wicked shall do wickedly: and none of the wicked shall understand; but the wise shall understand.*

- When the Bible says, "Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried" this means saved.
- When we get to the end, many are going to be purified and made white which means clean from sin.
- This doesn't mean the white race as white really isn't white. We're all sinners no matter the skin color.
- In Daniel Chapter 11, the next Scripture is talking about the saved who won't be deceived.

**[30] Daniel 11:33-34** *And they that understand among the people shall instruct many: yet they shall fall by the sword, and by flame, by captivity, and by spoil, many days. 34 Now when they shall fall, they shall be holpen with a little help: but many shall cleave to them with flatteries.*

**[31] Daniel 11:35** *And some of them of understanding shall fall, to try them, and to purge, and to make them white, even to the time of the end: because it is yet for a time appointed.*

- In the end, many people will be saved. Many will be tried. There will be troubles and tribulation.
- This is what Daniel Chapter 12 verse 10 tells us. You will have trouble when you stand up for God.

**[32] Daniel 12:10** *Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried; but the wicked shall do wickedly: and none of the wicked shall understand; but the wise shall understand.*

- "But the wicked shall do wickedly." That's what evil and wicked people do.
- "And NONE of the wicked shall understand." They won't understand what's happening.
- You'll say, "Can't you clearly see that the antichrist is wicked. He declares himself to be god."
- The Bible says right here that you're saved by faith alone. You're saved by believing on Jesus Christ.
- It doesn't take anything else. The wicked say, "Well, I think you still have to be baptized."

**[33] John 6:47** *Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me hath everlasting life.*

- What does Jesus say it takes to receive everlasting life? "HE THAT BELIEVETH ON ME."
- But yet, people who say they trust Jesus won't trust what Jesus says. The wicked shall not understand.
- If you just simply take a look at that verse and read it over and over and over again, you should see it.
- Do you see what it says there at the end of verse 10 in Daniel Chapter 12.
- I'll put it up on the screen again.

**[34] Daniel 12:10 Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried; but the wicked shall do wickedly: and none of the wicked shall understand; but the wise shall understand.**

- “But the wise shall understand.” Does say that all saved people will understand?
- No, it doesn’t. All saved people have the potential to be wise and understand the Bible.

**[35] Proverbs 1:5-6 A wise man will hear, and will increase learning; and a man of understanding shall attain unto wise counsels: 6 To understand a proverb, and the interpretation; the words of the wise, and their dark sayings.**

- When you hear this sermon on Daniel Chapter 12, you should want to increase your learning.
- Learning the Bible increases wisdom. Don’t you to be wise?
- Don’t you want to be able to help others make it to heaven? Who gives out wisdom? Let’s see.

**[36] Proverbs 2:1-3 My son, if thou wilt receive my words, and hide my commandments with thee; 2 So that thou incline thine ear unto wisdom, and apply thine heart to understanding; 3 Yea, if thou criest after knowledge, and liftest up thy voice for understanding;**

**[37] Proverbs 2:4-6 If thou seekest her as silver, and searchest for her as for hid treasures; 5 Then shalt thou understand the fear of the LORD, and find the knowledge of God. 6 For the LORD giveth wisdom: out of his mouth cometh knowledge and understanding.**

- God wants you to work for wisdom. He gave you the gift of eternal life and saved you.
- Now, you have the ability to become wise. All you have to do is use what God gave you.
- Work on the Bible, study the Bible, teach what you’re learning to others, and he will give you more.
- But, you might ask why the unsaved or the wicked shall not understand. The Bible answers that too.

**[38] 1 Corinthians 2:12-13 Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God. 13 Which things also we speak, not in the words which man’s wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual.**

**[39] 1 Corinthians 2:14-15 But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned. 15 But he that is spiritual judgeth all things, yet he himself is judged of no man.**

- When you have the Holy Ghost within you, he teaches you. He gives you spiritual understanding.
- And that is far above man’s wisdom or the world’s wisdom. The unsaved can’t understand spiritual things.
- When they see the words of the Bible, they can’t understand them.
- When they see John 6:47, they can’t get it. They say: “Yeah, you have to repent of your sin to be saved.”
- And I respond, “But Jesus never says that. He says there’s just one requirement. Believe on him.”
- They respond: “Jesus must have made a mistake because Billy Graham said you must repent of your sin.”

Who are you going to trust? JESUS CHRIST HIMSELF or Billy Graham or your other false preacher?

- That’s the same thing Daniel Chapter 12 is saying here.
- And it’s mentioned there in this chapter because what’s coming up next isn’t so easy.



- “But the wise shall understand.” So, let’s keep going in Daniel Chapter 12 verse 11.

**[40] Daniel 12:11 *And from the time that the daily sacrifice shall be taken away, and the abomination that maketh desolate set up, there shall be a thousand two hundred and ninety days.***

- So, we know that the abomination of desolation takes place right in the middle of the 7-year period.
- Right in the middle of Daniel’s 70<sup>th</sup> week is the abomination of desolation.
- This is when the antichrist comes into the temple and takes away the daily sacrifice.
- And he sets up a false image for people to worship.

From the time the daily sacrifice is taken away and the abomination of desolation is setup, there will be 1,290 days to the end.

- That’s exactly what that verse says, and that’s exactly what it means.
- So, what this tells us is the first half of Daniel’s 70<sup>th</sup> week is 1,260 days or 3.5 years.
- And the second half of Daniel’s 70<sup>th</sup> week is 1,290 days or 3.5 years PLUS an extra month or 30 days.
- So, you can say there’s 42 months in the first half and 43 months in the second half.

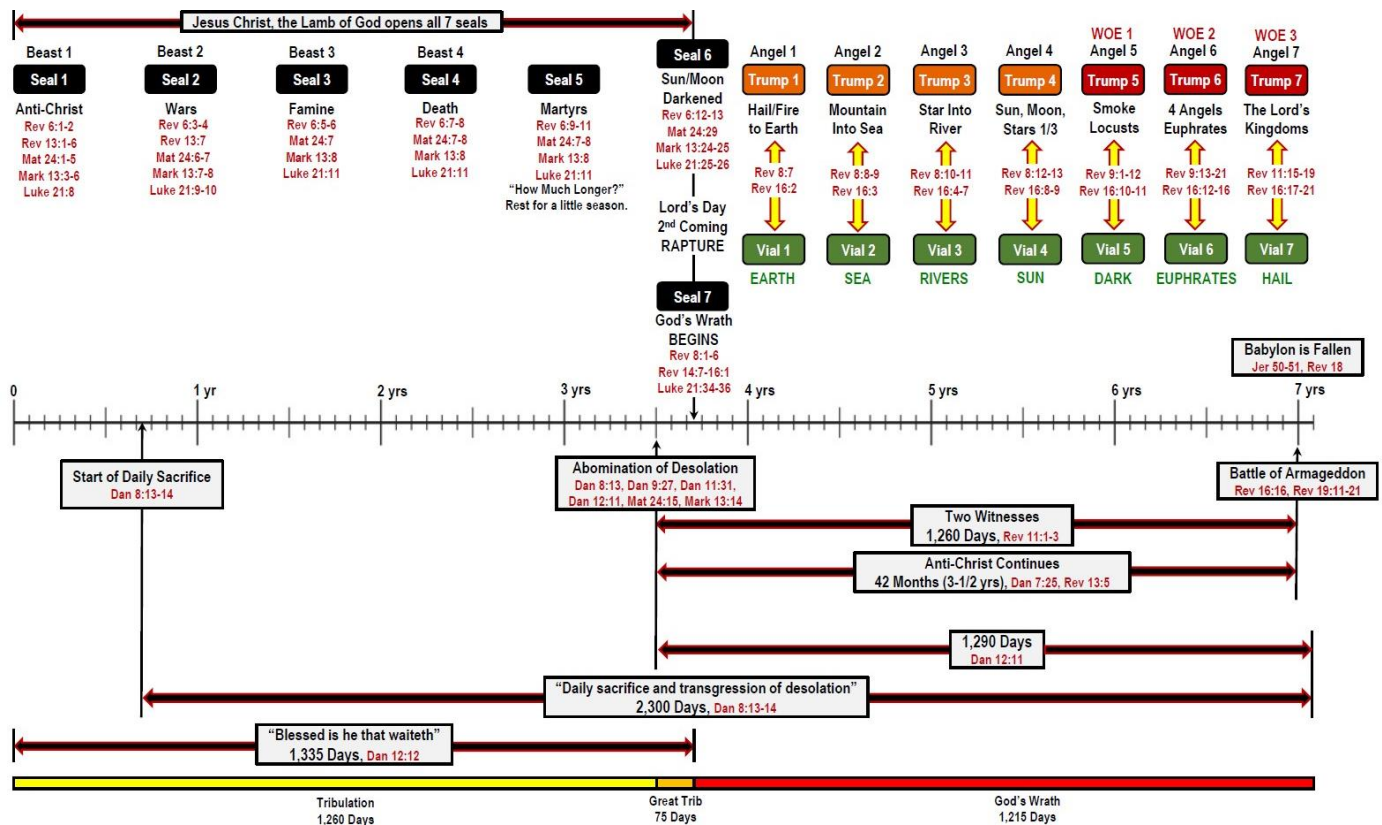
Why? Because that’s what the Bible says. Right here in Daniel 12:11 it says 1,290 days.

- 1,290 divided by 30-day months is 43 months. This is easily explained when using solar years.
- For example, it’s easy for us to understand because we use solar years.
- We have 365 days in a year versus 360 days in a year as the Bible uses 30-day months.
- So, each year there are 5 extra days.  $365 - 360 = 5$  extra days per year.

So, as we move through Daniel’s 70<sup>th</sup> week, which is a period of 7 years, we’re adding up extra days.

- Year 1=5 extra days, Year 2=5 extra days, Year 3=5 extra days, Year 4=5 extra days.
- Year 5=5 extra days, Year 6=5 extra days. By the time we reach the end of year 6, we have 30 extra days.
- When we reach the end of year 7, there are an extra 30 days there or an extra month.
- That’s why there are 42 months in the first half and 43 months in the second half.
- Now, it all makes sense with Daniel Chapter 12 verse 11.
- Remember, we were just warned that this will be more difficult. But it’s really not once you see it.
- Now, let’s put Daniel’s 70<sup>th</sup> week timeline up on the screen.

**[41]**



- Notice the timeline right in the middle with the years and the tick marks.
- Each tick mark is a month. Over there at the end of the 7 years you'll see an extra tick mark.
- That's the extra 30 days or the extra month. Now, find the abomination of desolation.
- It's right there in the middle. Look down a little there and find the 1,290 days.
- You'll see the line moves from the abomination of desolation to the very end or 1,290 days.
- And you'll see the verse reference to Daniel Chapter 12 verse 11. Hopefully that makes sense now.
- Let's move onto to another tough verse as we close out the entire Book of Daniel. Almost there.

**[42] Daniel 12:12 Blessed is he that waiteth, and cometh to the thousand three hundred and five and thirty days.**

- We just saw there's 1,290 days from the abomination of desolation to the very end of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week.
- We know the subject is the same here. We're talking about end times prophecy and Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week.
- So, we can't just assume we're starting at the abomination of desolation and counting forward.
- Why? Because the number given here is 1,335 days. That would put us past the end point by 45 days.
- This would take us into the thousand year reign of Jesus Christ by 45 days.
- There's nothing anywhere in the Bible that talks about something happening 45 days into the thousand year reign of Jesus Christ.

The proof, though, is we're talking about what happens until the end. We're not going past the end point.

- We aren't moving past Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week in Daniel Chapter 12.
- The angel mentions this is what happens unto the end, which means the end of the 7 years.
- Many people will take the 1,335 days and continue past the end. But that's wrong.
- This angel isn't going past the end point in this prophecy.

So, what is this “Blessed is he that waiteth, and cometh to the 1335 days?”

- I want you to see this because this truly is amazing. When you stop and study, God reveals the truth.
- I’m not making any of this up. God is giving us the exact number of days in Daniel Chapter 12.
- Is he not? He just gave us 1290 days and now 1335 days. The exact number of days.
- And what happens at the end of the 1335 days? Well, look at the verse and see what clues it gives us.

**[43] Daniel 12:12 *Blessed is he that waiteth, and cometh to the thousand three hundred and five and thirty days.***

- “Blessed is he that waiteth.” So, this must be something we’re waiting for.
- Is there anything we’re waiting for and hoping for to come? Think about that.
- What are you waiting for in your life? Are you waiting for your birthday, Christmas, something else?
- Maybe this verse might give you a clue of what I’m trying to say.

**[44] Psalm 102:13 *Thou shalt arise, and have mercy upon Zion: for the time to favour her, yea, the set time, is come.***

- THOU SHALT ARISE at this set time. You should be waiting for something much better than Christmas.

**[45] Romans 8:23 *And not only they, but ourselves also, which have the firstfruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting for the adoption, to wit, the redemption of our body.***

- When does the redemption of our body take place? AT THE RAPTURE. At the second coming of Jesus Christ.
- The New Testament tells us this over and over again. We’re waiting to receive a newly glorified body.

**[46] 2 Thessalonians 3:5 *And the Lord direct your hearts into the love of God, and into the patient waiting for Christ.***

- We should be patiently waiting for the coming of the Lord Jesus Christ. This is the day of the Lord.
- This is the day the rapture occurs. This is when you get a brand new body that is immortal.

**[47] 1 Corinthians 1:6-8 *Even as the testimony of Christ was confirmed in you: 7 So that ye come behind in no gift; waiting for the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ: 8 Who shall also confirm you unto the end, that ye may be blameless in the day of our Lord Jesus Christ.***

- You will be blameless in your new body. This happens at the rapture.

**[48] 1 Thessalonians 1:10 *And to wait for his Son from heaven, whom he raised from the dead, even Jesus, which delivered us from the wrath to come.***

- When Jesus comes in the clouds, he is delivering us from God’s wrath that is about to happen.
- The entire Bible makes perfect sense when you get all of this right.
- So, we now know the endpoint of the 1,335 days. It’s the rapture on our timeline.
- So, we set the 1,335 days at the very beginning of Daniel’s 70<sup>th</sup> week because it’s the first half.

- And at the end of the 1,335 days, the rapture or the Day of the Lord will happen.
- So, you can place the rapture on the timeline 1,335 days from the beginning of Daniel's 70<sup>th</sup> week.
- And you might say, "Well, how do you know that's what it means?"
- Let's read the very last verse in Daniel Chapter 12 and the entire Book of Daniel.

**[49] Daniel 12:13 But go thou thy way till the end be: for thou shalt rest, and stand in thy lot at the end of the days.**

- This is the angel talking to Daniel directly. "But go thy way till the end be."
- We all know Daniel already died. The angel is telling him to go on with his life until the end be.
- Remember, this is going to happen many days from now. The angel tells Daniel, "FOR THOU SHALT REST."
- In other words, Daniel's body is going to rest in the grave until the end of the days.
- At the end of the verse, you see: "And stand in thy lot at the end of the days."
- What days? Daniel will stand in his lot or his group where he belongs at the end of the 1,335 days.
- Daniel is going to be resurrected at the end of 1,335 days AT THE RAPTURE.
- Remember, all the saved prior to the rapture, that's Daniel, will arise at the rapture.

**[50] 1 Thessalonians 4:16-17 For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first: 17 Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.**

- The dead in Christ shall rise first. That's Daniel. Do you see how all of this fits together perfectly now?
- Some people might say that you can predict exactly when the rapture happens.
- But the problem with that is you don't know when the antichrist confirms the covenant.
- You don't know when the 7-year time period begins. You don't know when the tribulation begins.
- But yes, you will know at some point when the tribulation is already here.
- But you don't know the exact time, hour, minute, second that it began.
- As all of those things get closer, the Bible says that you'll know the time is getting closer.

**[51] Hebrews 10:25 Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is; but exhorting one another: and so much the more, as ye see the day approaching.**

- We should know when we're getting very close to the rapture if we're still alive.
- When we see the sun and moon darkened, we know the day is here.

**[52] 1 Thessalonians 5:4-5 But ye, brethren, are not in darkness, that that day should overtake you as a thief. 5 Ye are all the children of light, and the children of the day: we are not of the night, nor of darkness.**

- With what we've learned, you can't pick a day. But the day shouldn't overtake you like a thief.
- If you're here today, if you're studying the Bible, that day will not overtake you.
- You'll see it coming just like the Bible says. Why? Because you have wisdom and understanding.

**[53] Matthew 25:13 Watch therefore, for ye know neither the day nor the hour wherein the Son of man cometh.**

- So, now look at the timeline. The abomination of desolation is right there in the middle.
- The great tribulation begins at that point. You see the rapture after the abomination of desolation.
- You see the rapture ends the great tribulation. We know the abomination of desolation is in the middle.
- The middle is at 1260 days from the start. The rapture is at 1335 days from the start.
- The difference in those is 75 days. So, the great tribulation will last about 75 days.
- Or 2.5 months. Do you see this now? That's where all the timing comes from on this chart.

I hope this chart now makes sense to you. Study it yourself, and you'll be ready for the end.

- And if the end doesn't happen in your lifetime, teach this to your children and grandchildren.
- They'll need to be ready. They'll need to know what to look for when all this comes to pass.

***[54] Luke 21:28 And when these things begin to come to pass, then look up, and lift up your heads; for your redemption draweth nigh.***

- Now, do I think everything on this chart is 100% perfect. Most likely it isn't.
- But I do believe that it's very close because we've used the Bible for every bit of it.
- And it all comes together and makes perfect sense with the entire Bible from front to back.

Let's pray.

## THANKS FOR READING THIS BOOK OF DANIEL BIBLE STUDY



We wanted to thank you here at True Words Christian Church for reading this Bible Study on the Book of Daniel.

God will bless you greatly for reading and studying the Book of Daniel. Some false preachers will tell you that the Old Testament is not important. You should get away from those preachers!

The Book of Daniel is required to understand end times prophecy. Thank God for giving us the Book of Daniel and the entire Bible from front to back.

***Psalm 138:2 I will worship toward thy holy temple, and praise thy name for thy lovingkindness and for thy truth: for thou hast magnified thy word above all thy name.***

God himself has magnified HIS WORD above his own name so it must be important!

This is why we need to study the Book of Daniel with all that we have. I'm glad you're reading right now!

Thanks again for reading and studying the Bible. God needs more of us out there spreading the truth. Please see the True Words Christian website for many additional Bible studies and sermons.

We hope to see you one day at Church. If we don't see you at Church, we'll see you in heaven or in the clouds at the second coming of Jesus Christ.

May God Greatly Bless You,  
Joshua Tapp  
[josh@truewordschristian.org](mailto:josh@truewordschristian.org)  
[TrueWordsChristian.org](http://TrueWordsChristian.org)